



**2018**

**OWNER'S MANUAL**

**CHASSIS CAB**

## **VEHICLES SOLD IN CANADA**

With respect to any Vehicles Sold in Canada, the name FCA US LLC shall be deemed to be deleted and the name FCA Canada Inc. used in substitution therefore.

## **DRIVING AND ALCOHOL**

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents.

Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

### **WARNING!**

**Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.**

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this manual that are not on this vehicle.

FCA US LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

Copyright © 2018 FCA US LLC



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## SECTION

## PAGE

|    |                                                 |     |    |
|----|-------------------------------------------------|-----|----|
| 1  | INTRODUCTION . . . . .                          | 3   | 1  |
| 2  | GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS . . . . .           | 9   | 2  |
| 3  | GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE . . . . .          | 15  | 3  |
| 4  | GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . . | 129 | 4  |
| 5  | SAFETY . . . . .                                | 165 | 5  |
| 6  | STARTING AND OPERATING . . . . .                | 241 | 6  |
| 7  | IN CASE OF EMERGENCY . . . . .                  | 321 | 7  |
| 8  | SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE . . . . .             | 359 | 8  |
| 9  | TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS . . . . .              | 427 | 9  |
| 10 | MULTIMEDIA . . . . .                            | 441 | 10 |
| 11 | CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE . . . . .                   | 509 | 11 |
| 12 | INDEX . . . . .                                 | 515 | 12 |



# INTRODUCTION

1

## CONTENTS

---

|                                    |   |                                               |   |
|------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|---|
| ■ INTRODUCTION . . . . .           | 4 | ■ WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS . . . . .             | 7 |
| ■ HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL . . . . . | 5 | ■ VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS . . . . .           | 7 |
| □ Essential Information . . . . .  | 5 | ■ VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS . . . . . | 7 |
| □ Symbols . . . . .                | 6 |                                               |   |

## INTRODUCTION

Dear Customer, congratulations on selecting your new vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality.

This is a specialized utility vehicle. It can go places and perform tasks that are not intended for conventional passenger vehicles. It handles and maneuvers differently from many passenger vehicles both on-road and off-road, so take time to become familiar with your vehicle. If equipped, the two-wheel drive version of this vehicle was designed for on-road use only. It is not intended for off-road driving or use in other severe conditions suited for a four-wheel drive vehicle. Before you start to drive this vehicle, read the Owner's Manual. Be sure you are familiar with all vehicle controls, particularly those used for braking, steering, transmission, and transfer case shifting. Learn how your vehicle handles on different road surfaces. Your driving skills will improve with experience. When driving off-road, or working the vehicle, don't overload the vehicle or expect the vehicle to overcome the natural laws of physics. Always observe federal, state, provincial and local laws wherever you drive. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or a collision. Refer to the "Driving Tips" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

This Owner's Manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle. It is supplemented by Warranty Information, and customer oriented documents. In the attached Warranty Booklet you will find a description of the services that FCA offers to its customers, the Warranty Certificate and the details of the terms and conditions for maintaining its validity. Please take the time to read all of these publications carefully before driving your vehicle for the first time. Following the instructions, recommendations, tips, and important warnings in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual describes all versions of this vehicle. Options and equipment dedicated to specific markets or versions are not expressly indicated in the text. Therefore, you should only consider the information which is related to the trim level, engine, and version that you have purchased. Any content introduced throughout the Owner's Information, that may or may not be applicable to your vehicle, will be identified with the wording "If Equipped". All data contained in this publication are intended to help you use your vehicle in the best possible way. FCA aims at a constant improvement of the vehicles produced. For this reason, it reserves the right to make changes to the model

described for technical and/or commercial reasons. For further information, contact an authorized dealer.

If applicable, refer to the Owner's Manual Supplement for related information.

**NOTE:** After reviewing the Owner's Information, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient referencing, and remain with the vehicle when sold.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

### Essential Information

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

Since the specification of your vehicle depends on the items of equipment ordered, certain descriptions and illustrations may differ from your vehicle's equipment.

The detailed index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

## Symbols

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:

|                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| WATER IN FUEL                                                                     | REAR WINDOW WIPER                                                                 | WINDSHIELD WIPER INTERMITTENT                                                     | EXTERIOR BULB FAILURE                                                             | HIGH BEAM                                                                         | TURN SIGNALS                                                                      | UPPER AIR OUTLET                                                                  | HEATED SEAT LOW                                                                   | DOOR LOCK                                                                           | ADJUSTABLE PEDALS                                                                   | ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL                                                            | ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM / BRAKE ASSIST SYSTEM                                  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| FUEL                                                                              | REAR WINDOW INTERMITTENT WIPER                                                    | WINDSHIELD WASHER                                                                 | MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH                                                            | LOW BEAM                                                                          | KEY ACTIVATE (POWER OUTLET)                                                       | UPPER AND LOWER AIR OUTLET                                                        | HEATED SEAT HIGH                                                                  | WINDOW LIFT                                                                         | TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR                                                               | HILL DESCENT CONTROL                                                                | BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE                                                  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| FUEL FILL SIDE                                                                    | REAR WINDOW WASHER                                                                | WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID LEVEL                                                     | DOME LIGHT                                                                        | FRONT FOG LIGHT                                                                   | HOOD RELEASE                                                                      | LOWER AIR OUTLET                                                                  | RECIRCULATION                                                                     | CONVERTIBLE 4 WINDOW DOWN                                                           | ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL                                                        | ALL WHEEL DRIVE                                                                     | FAILURE OF ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM                                                  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ENGINE OIL                                                                        | REAR WINDOW DEFROST                                                               | WINDSHIELD ELECTRICALLY HEATED                                                    | PARK LIGHTS                                                                       | REAR FOG LAMP                                                                     | LIFTGATE RELEASE AND LIFTGATE OPEN                                                | DEFROST AND LOWER AIR OUTLET                                                      | VENTILATING FAN                                                                   | WINDOW LOCK                                                                         | ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL                                                         | FOUR WHEEL DRIVE                                                                    | BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE                                                  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| BATTERY CHARGING                                                                  | HEATED MIRROR                                                                     | WINDSHIELD DEFROST                                                                | INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION                                                     | SEAT BELT                                                                         | SLIDING DOOR                                                                      | TRUNK / DECK RELEASE                                                              | AIR CONDITIONING                                                                  | CHILD SEAT TETHER ANCHOR                                                            | VOICE RECOGNITION BUTTON                                                            | WARNING                                                                             | TOW / HAUL                                                                          |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| GLOW PLUG                                                                         | POWER STEERING FLUID                                                              | WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER                                                       | SIDE AIRBAG                                                                       | AIRBAG                                                                            | SLIDING DOOR                                                                      | EMERGENCY RELEASE HANDLE                                                          | LIGHTER                                                                           | LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHER FOR CHILDREN (LATCH)                                       | DISCONNECT™ BUTTON                                                                  | HAZARD                                                                              | 4 LOW                                                                               |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT                                                       | TRANS OIL TEMP                                                                    | ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE                                                        | SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM                                                     | PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF                                                              | DOOR AJAR                                                                         | CONVERTIBLE TOP DOWN                                                              | CONVERTIBLE TOP UP                                                                | HORN                                                                                | SEE OWNER'S MANUAL ISO                                                              | A/C PUSH                                                                            | ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF                                                    |



## WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures that could result in a collision, bodily injury and/or death. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire Owner's Manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

## VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/body builders. U.S. residents refer to the Warranty Information book, Section 2.1.C. Canadian residents refer to the "What Is Not Covered" section of the Warranty Information book. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builder's Guide refer to [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com). This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

## VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

### WARNING!

**Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to a collision resulting in serious injury or death.**



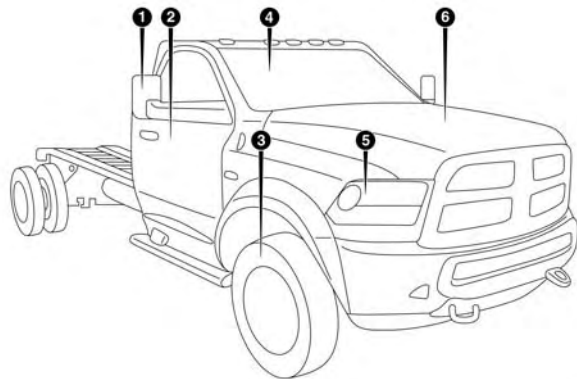
# GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CONTENTS

---

|                        |     |                              |     |
|------------------------|-----|------------------------------|-----|
| ■ FRONT VIEW . . . . . | .10 | ■ INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . . | .12 |
| ■ REAR VIEW . . . . .  | .11 | ■ INTERIOR . . . . .         | .13 |

## FRONT VIEW

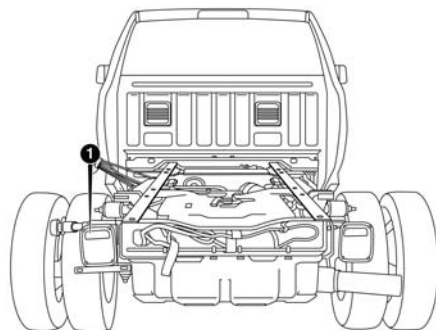


0201117099US

**Front View**

- 1 — Exterior Mirrors
- 2 — Doors
- 3 — Wheels/Tires

- 4 — Windshield
  - 5 — Headlights
  - 6 — Hood/Engine Compartment
-

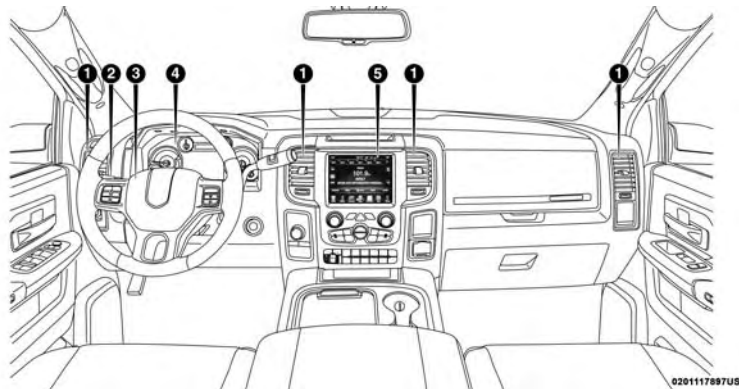
**REAR VIEW****2**

0201117900US

**Rear View**1 — Rear Lights

---

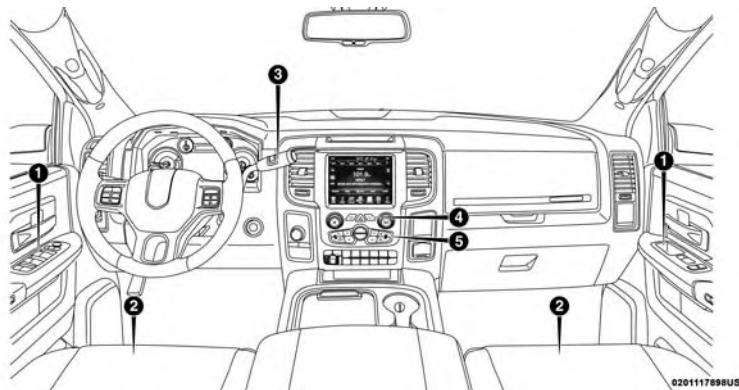
## INSTRUMENT PANEL



**Instrument Panel**

- 1 — Air Vents
- 2 — Multifunction Lever
- 3 — Steering Wheel

- 4 — Instrument Cluster
- 5 — Radio

**INTERIOR****2****Interior**

- 1 — Door Locks/Window Switches
- 2 — Seats
- 3 — Gear Selector

- 4 — Switch Panel
- 5 — Climate Controls





# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

|                                                                      |    |                                                |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|------------------------------------------------|----|
| ■ KEYS . . . . .                                                     | 19 | □ General Information . . . . .                | 30 |
| □ Key Fobs . . . . .                                                 | 19 | ■ SENTRY KEY . . . . .                         | 30 |
| ■ IGNITION SWITCH . . . . .                                          | 26 | □ Customer Key Programming . . . . .           | 31 |
| □ Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) — If Equipped. . .                    | 26 | □ Replacement Keys . . . . .                   | 31 |
| □ Keyless Push Button Ignition — If Equipped . .                     | 27 | □ General Information . . . . .                | 32 |
| □ Key-In-Ignition Reminder . . . . .                                 | 28 | ■ VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM . . . . .             | 32 |
| ■ REMOTE START — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                               | 28 | □ To Arm The System . . . . .                  | 32 |
| □ How To Use Remote Start. . . . .                                   | 28 | □ To Disarm The System . . . . .               | 33 |
| □ Remote Start Abort Message . . . . .                               | 28 | □ Rearming Of The System . . . . .             | 33 |
| □ To Enter Remote Start Mode . . . . .                               | 29 | □ Security System Manual Override . . . . .    | 34 |
| □ To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The<br>Vehicle . . . . . | 29 | ■ DOORS . . . . .                              | 34 |
| □ To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The<br>Vehicle . . . . .       | 29 | □ Manual Door Locks . . . . .                  | 34 |
| □ Remote Start Comfort Systems — If Equipped . .                     | 30 | □ Power Door Locks — If Equipped . . . . .     | 35 |
|                                                                      |    | □ Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry . . . . . | 36 |

|                                                                   |    |                                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| □ Automatic Door Locks — If Equipped . . . . .                    | 39 | ■ STEERING WHEEL . . . . .                                                              | 56 |
| □ Child-Protection Door Lock . . . . .                            | 40 | □ Tilt Steering Column . . . . .                                                        | 56 |
| ■ SEATS . . . . .                                                 | 41 | □ Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped. . . . .                                          | 57 |
| □ Manual Front Seat Adjustment . . . . .                          | 41 | ■ DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS —<br>IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                                   | 57 |
| □ Manual Rear Seat Adjustment. . . . .                            | 43 | ■ MIRRORS . . . . .                                                                     | 59 |
| □ Power Driver Seat Adjustment — If Equipped . . . . .            | 44 | □ Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped . . . . .                                       | 59 |
| □ Power Passenger Seat Adjustment —<br>If Equipped . . . . .      | 46 | □ Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped . . . . .                                      | 59 |
| □ Driver Memory Seat — If Equipped . . . . .                      | 46 | □ Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View<br>Camera Display — If Equipped . . . . .     | 60 |
| □ Heated Seats — If Equipped . . . . .                            | 50 | □ Outside Mirrors . . . . .                                                             | 61 |
| □ Ventilated Seats — If Equipped. . . . .                         | 52 | □ Driver's Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror —<br>If Equipped. . . . .                   | 61 |
| □ Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers<br>(Regular Cab Models) . . . . . | 53 | □ Power Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .                                                 | 62 |
| ■ HEAD RESTRAINTS . . . . .                                       | 53 | □ Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And<br>Trailer Tow — If Equipped . . . . . | 63 |
| □ Front Head Restraint Adjustment . . . . .                       | 54 | □ Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .                                        | 65 |
| □ Rear Head Restraint Adjustment. . . . .                         | 54 | □ Heated Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .                                                | 66 |
| □ Front Head Restraint Removal . . . . .                          | 55 |                                                                                         |    |
| □ Rear Head Restraint Removal . . . . .                           | 55 |                                                                                         |    |

|                                                                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| □ Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped . . . .                                | .66 |
| □ Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped . . . .                                   | .67 |
| ■ EXTERIOR LIGHTS . . . . .                                                         | .68 |
| □ Headlight Switch . . . . .                                                        | .68 |
| □ Headlights . . . . .                                                              | .69 |
| □ Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped .                                      | .69 |
| □ Multifunction Lever . . . . .                                                     | .69 |
| □ High/Low Beam Switch . . . . .                                                    | .70 |
| □ Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control —<br>If Equipped . . . . .                   | .70 |
| □ Flash-To-Pass . . . . .                                                           | .71 |
| □ Automatic Headlights — If Equipped . . . . .                                      | .71 |
| □ Parking Lights And Panel Lights . . . . .                                         | .72 |
| □ Headlights On With Wipers (Available With<br>Automatic Headlights Only) . . . . . | .72 |
| □ Headlight Delay . . . . .                                                         | .72 |
| □ Lights-On Reminder . . . . .                                                      | .72 |
| □ Fog Lights — If Equipped . . . . .                                                | .73 |

|                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| □ Turn Signals . . . . .                                         | .73 |
| □ Lane Change Assist — If Equipped . . . . .                     | .74 |
| □ Cargo Light . . . . .                                          | .74 |
| □ Battery Saver . . . . .                                        | .74 |
| ■ INTERIOR LIGHTS . . . . .                                      | .74 |
| □ Courtesy Lights . . . . .                                      | .74 |
| □ Illuminated Approach . . . . .                                 | .77 |
| ■ WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS . . . . .                        | .77 |
| □ Windshield Wipers . . . . .                                    | .77 |
| □ Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped . . . . .                    | .79 |
| ■ CLIMATE CONTROLS . . . . .                                     | .80 |
| □ Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen .                  | .80 |
| □ Automatic Climate Controls With A<br>Touchscreen . . . . .     | .85 |
| □ Climate Control Functions . . . . .                            | .93 |
| □ Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) — If<br>Equipped . . . . . | .94 |
| □ Operating Tips . . . . .                                       | .95 |

|                                                   |     |                                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ WINDOWS . . . . .                               | 97  | □ Security . . . . .                                        | 108 |
| □ Power Windows — If Equipped . . . . .           | 97  | □ Troubleshooting Tips . . . . .                            | 108 |
| □ Wind Buffeting . . . . .                        | 100 | □ General Information . . . . .                             | 109 |
| ■ HOOD . . . . .                                  | 100 | ■ INTERNAL EQUIPMENT . . . . .                              | 109 |
| □ To Open The Hood . . . . .                      | 100 | □ Storage . . . . .                                         | 109 |
| □ To Close The Hood . . . . .                     | 101 | □ Cupholders . . . . .                                      | 121 |
| ■ GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .      | 102 | □ Electrical Power Outlets . . . . .                        | 122 |
| □ Before You Begin Programming HomeLink . . . . . | 103 | □ Cigar Lighter And Ash Receiver —<br>If Equipped . . . . . | 126 |
| □ Programming A Rolling Code . . . . .            | 104 | □ Power Inverter — If Equipped . . . . .                    | 126 |
| □ Programming A Non-Rolling Code . . . . .        | 105 | □ Auxiliary Switches — If Equipped . . . . .                | 127 |
| □ Canadian/Gate Operator Programming . . . . .    | 106 |                                                             |     |
| □ Using HomeLink . . . . .                        | 108 |                                                             |     |

## KEYS

### Key Fobs

Your vehicle uses either a wireless ignition node system or keyless ignition system. The ignition system consists of a key fob with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) and an ignition switch. The keyless ignition system consists of a key fob and Keyless Enter-N-Go button.

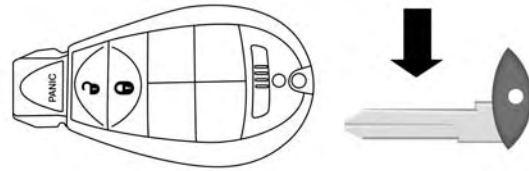
**NOTE:** The key fob may not be found if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal.

The key fob operates the ignition switch. Insert the square end of the key fob into the ignition switch located on the instrument panel and rotate to the desired position. It also contains the key fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the key fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the key fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch at the top of the key fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

**NOTE:** When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the key into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.



0301117793US

### Key Fob Emergency Key

This Keyless Push Button Ignition key fob allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the key fob is in the passenger compartment. The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions, three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN.

The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate. It also contains the key fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the key fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the key fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch on the backside of the key fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

**NOTE:** When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to disarm the security system.



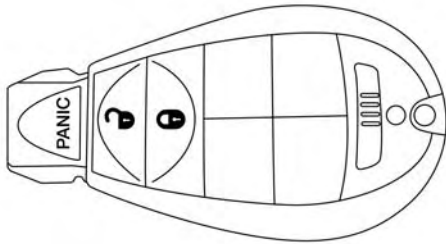
0301117809US

### Key Fob Emergency Key

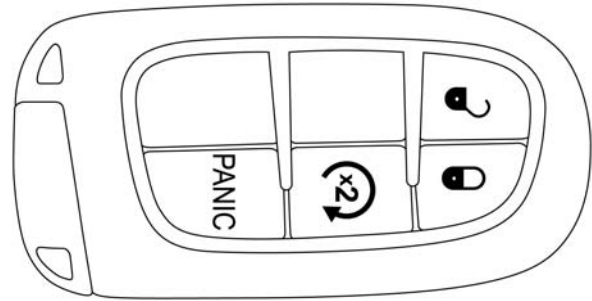
**NOTE:** You can insert the double-sided emergency key into the door lock cylinder with either side up.

The Remote Keyless Entry system allows you to lock or unlock all doors, and the tailgate as well as activate the Panic Alarm from distances up to approximately 66 ft (20 m) using a key fob with integrated key. The key fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system. Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

**NOTE:** Inserting the key fob with integrated key into the ignition switch disables the system from responding to any button pushes from that key fob. Driving at speeds 5 mph (8 km/h) and above disables the system from responding to all key fob buttons for all key fobs.



**WIN Key Fob With Integrated Key**



0301117812US

### Passive Entry Key Fob

#### To Unlock The Doors And Tailgate

Push and release the unlock button on the key fob once to unlock the driver's door. Push the unlock button twice within five seconds to unlock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash to acknowledge the unlock signal. The illuminated entry system will also turn on.

**NOTE:** The instrument cluster display or Uconnect Settings are setup for driver door first, otherwise this will unlock all doors.

## To Lock The Doors And Tailgate

Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

## Sound Horn With Lock

This feature will cause the horn to chirp when the doors are locked with the key fob. This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

**NOTE:** Pushing the lock button on the key fob while you are in the vehicle will activate the vehicle security alarm system. Opening a door with the vehicle security alarm system activated will cause the alarm to sound. Push the unlock button to deactivate the vehicle security alarm system.

## Using The Panic Alarm

To turn the Panic Alarm feature on or off, push the Panic button on the key fob. When the Panic Alarm is activated, the turn signals will flash, the horn will pulse on and off, and the interior lights will turn on.

The Panic Alarm will stay on for three minutes unless you turn it off by either pushing the Panic button a second time or drive the vehicle at a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h) or greater.

### NOTE:

- The interior lights will turn off if you place the ignition in the ACC or ON/RUN position while the Panic Alarm is activated. However, the exterior lights and horn will remain on.
- You may need to be less than 35 ft (11 m) from the vehicle when using the key fob to turn off the Panic Alarm due to the radio frequency noises emitted by the system.

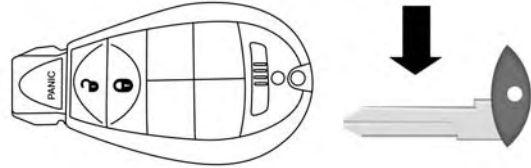


## Replacing The Battery In The Key Fob With Remote Control

The recommended replacement battery is one CR2032 battery.

### NOTE:

- Perchlorate Material — special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate) for further information.
  - Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.
1. Remove the emergency key by sliding the mechanical latch on the back of the key fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.



3

0301117793US

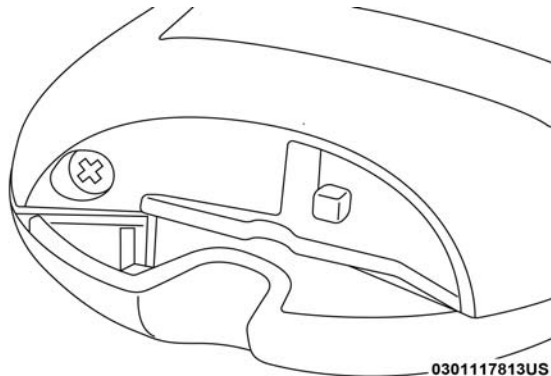
### Emergency Key Removal



0301117809US

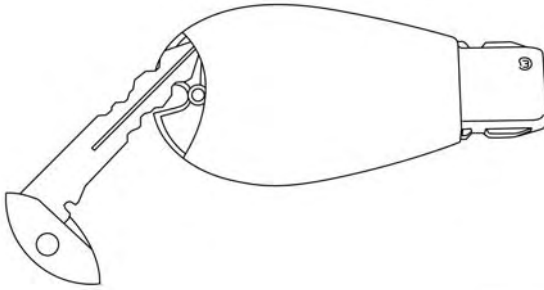
**Emergency Key Removal**

2. Separating key fob halves requires screw removal – if equipped, and gently prying the two halves of the key fob apart. Make sure not to damage the seal during removal.



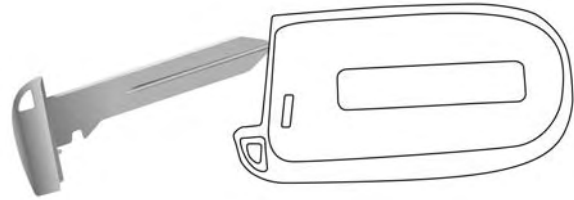
0301117813US

**Remove Screw From Key Fob Case**



0301117795US

### Separating Key Fob Case



0301101915NA

### Separating Key Fob Case

3. Remove the battery by turning the back cover over (battery facing downward) and tapping it lightly on a solid surface such as a table or similar, then replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on the battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on the back cover. Avoid touching the new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.
4. To assemble the key fob case, snap the two halves together, reposition and secure the screw as shown in step #2 for removal.

## Programming Additional Key Fobs

Programming the key fob may be performed by an authorized dealer.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

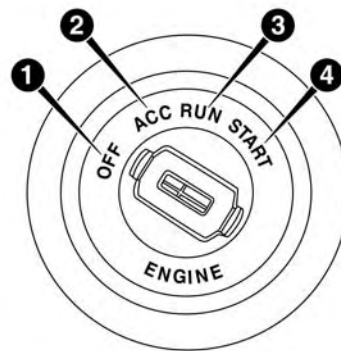
**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## IGNITION SWITCH

### Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) — If Equipped

The Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) operates similar to an ignition switch. It has four operating positions, three with

detents and one that is spring-loaded. The detent positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The START position is a spring-loaded momentary contact position. When released from the START position, the switch automatically returns to the ON/RUN position.



0301127600US

Wireless Ignition Switch

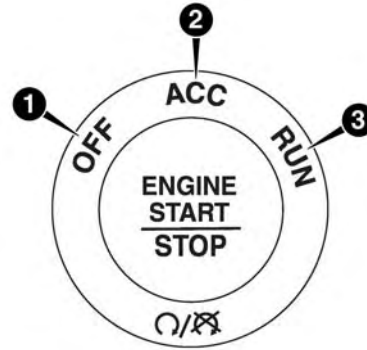
- 1 — OFF
- 2 — ACC (Accessory)
- 3 — ON/RUN
- 4 — START

### Keyless Push Button Ignition — If Equipped

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the Remote Keyless Entry key fob is in the passenger compartment.

The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions; three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate.

**NOTE:** In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button, with your foot applied on the brake pedal, and push to operate the ignition switch.



0301113478US

Keyless Push Button Ignition

- 1 — OFF
- 2 — ACC (Accessory)
- 3 — ON/RUN

## Key-In-Ignition Reminder

Opening the driver's door when the key fob is in the ignition and the ignition switch position is OFF or ACC, a chime will sound to remind you to remove the key fob.

### NOTE:

- "Keyed" Ignition systems will chime in OFF or ACC when the driver door is open.
- "Keyless" Ignition systems will chime in ACC or RUN when the driver door is open.
- The instrument cluster display will display "Key In Ignition."

## REMOTE START — IF EQUIPPED

### How To Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Gear selector in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- HAZARD switch off
- BRAKE switch inactive (brake pedal not pushed)
- Ignition key removed from ignition switch
- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- PANIC button not pushed
- Fuel meets minimum requirement
- System not disabled from previous remote start event
- Vehicle security alarm not active

### WARNING!

- **Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.**
- **Keep key fobs away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.**

### Remote Start Abort Message

The following messages will display in the instrument cluster display if the vehicle fails to remote start or exits remote start prematurely:

- Remote Start Cancelled — Door Open

- Remote Start Cancelled — Hood Open
- Remote Start Cancelled — Fuel Low
- Remote Start Cancelled — System Fault
- Remote Start Disabled — Start Vehicle to Reset

The instrument cluster display message stays active until the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN position.

### To Enter Remote Start Mode

Push and release the Remote Start button on the key fob twice within five seconds. The parking lights will flash, vehicle doors will lock, and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes.

#### NOTE:

- If your power door locks were unlocked, Remote Start will automatically lock the doors.
- If an engine fault is present or fuel level is low, the vehicle will start and then shut down in 10 seconds.
- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the key fob. However, the ignition must be placed in the ON/RUN position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

### To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The Vehicle

Push and release the remote start button one time or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

**NOTE:** To avoid unintentional shutdowns, the system will disable with a one time push of the remote start button for two seconds after receiving a valid remote start request.

### To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The Vehicle

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, push and release the unlock button on the key fob to unlock the doors and disarm the vehicle security alarm system (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

## Remote Start Comfort Systems — If Equipped

When Remote Start is activated, the heated steering wheel and driver heated seat features will automatically turn on in cold weather. In warm weather, the driver vented seat feature will automatically turn on when the remote start is activated. These features will stay on through the duration of Remote Start or until the ignition switch is placed in the ON/RUN mode.

**NOTE:** The Remote Start Comfort System can be activated and deactivated through the Uconnect System. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information on Remote Start Comfort System operation.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

## SENTRY KEY

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses a key fob, an Ignition Node Module, Keyless Push Button Ignition and a RF receiver to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only key fobs that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will not allow the engine to crank if an invalid key fob is used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if an invalid key fob is used to start the engine.

**NOTE:** A key fob that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key.

During normal operation, after placing the keyless ignition in the ON/RUN position, the vehicle security light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a



problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key fob to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the vehicle security light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

### CAUTION!

**The Sentry Key Immobilizer system is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.**

All of the key fobs provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

### Customer Key Programming

Programming key fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer.

### Replacement Keys

**NOTE:** Only key fobs that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a key fob is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- **Always remove the key fobs from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.**
- **For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, always remember to place the ignition in the OFF position.**

**NOTE:** Duplication of key fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer. This procedure consists of programming a blank key fob to the vehicle electronics. A blank key fob is one that has never been programmed.

When having the Sentry Key Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM

The vehicle security alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the vehicle security alarm is activated, interior switches for door locks are disabled. The system provides both audible and visible signals for the first three minutes. The horn will sound, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals will flash and vehicle security light will flash repeatedly.

For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals, and vehicle security light will flash.

## To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the vehicle security alarm:

1. Remove the key from the ignition system (refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating" for further information).
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF."
  - For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF" and the key is physically removed from the ignition.
2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:
  - Push lock button on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.
  - Push the lock button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid key fob available in the same exterior zone (refer to "Keyless Enter- N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information).
  - Push the lock button on the key fob.

3. If any doors are open, close them.

The vehicle security alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the key fob to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the vehicle security light, in the instrument panel cluster, will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the vehicle security light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

### To Disarm The System

The vehicle security alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

1. Push the unlock button on the key fob.
2. Grasp the Passive Entry Unlock Door Handle with a valid key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passive entry door handle. If equipped, refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.
3. Cycle the ignition out of the OFF position.
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, push the Keyless Ignition START/STOP button (requires at least one valid key fob in the vehicle).

- For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, insert a valid key into the ignition switch and turn the key to the ON position.

The vehicle security alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the vehicle security alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

If the vehicle security alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the vehicle security alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

### Rearming Of The System

The vehicle security alarm will reararm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and vehicle security light flashing, if the system has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the system will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

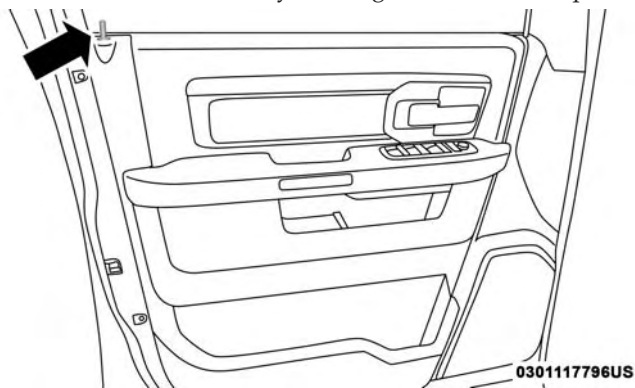
## Security System Manual Override

The vehicle security alarm will not arm if you lock the doors using the manual door lock plunger.

## DOORS

### Manual Door Locks

Front and rear doors may be locked by moving the lock knob down or unlocked by moving the lock knob up.



Door Lock Knob

Front doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock knob.

Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The emergency key will unlock the driver door lock on your vehicle.

### WARNING!

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- For personal security and safety in the event of an collision, lock the vehicle doors as you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.
- Before exiting a vehicle, always shift the automatic transmission into PARK or the manual transmission into FIRST gear or REVERSE, apply the parking brake, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the key fobs from vehicle, and lock all doors. and lock your vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.

*(Continued)*

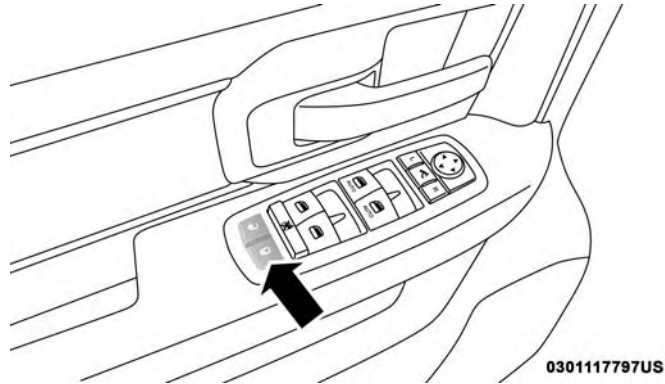
**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**Power Door Locks — If Equipped**

The power door lock switches are on each front door trim panel. Use these switches to lock or unlock the doors.

**NOTE:** The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle Keyless Enter-N-Go system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the Keyless Enter-N-Go system from starting the vehicle.



**Power Door Lock Switch**

If you push the power door lock switch while the key fob is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your key fob in the vehicle. Removing the key fob or closing the door will allow the locks to operate. A chime will sound if the key fob is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the key fob.

### Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons.

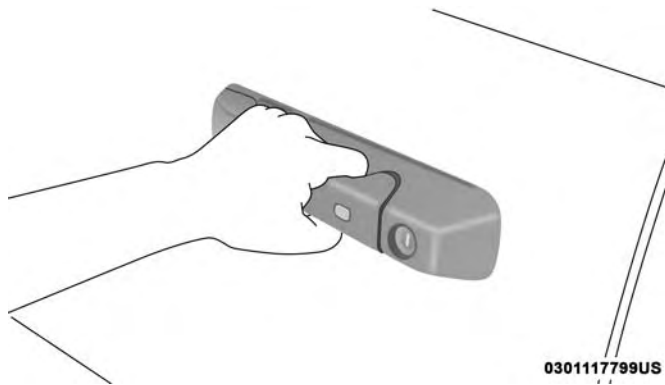
#### NOTE:

- Passive Entry may be programmed ON/OFF. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" for further information.
- If wearing gloves on your hands, or if it has been raining/snowing on the Passive Entry door handle, the unlock sensitivity can be affected, resulting in a slower response time.
- If the vehicle is unlocked by Passive Entry and no door is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle will re-lock and if equipped will arm the security alarm.
- The vehicle's security alarm can be armed/disarmed by pushing the passive entry key fob lock/unlock buttons (if equipped).

- The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle passive entry system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the passive entry handle from locking/unlocking the vehicle.

#### To Unlock From The Driver's Side:

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.



0301117799US

**Grab The Door Handle To Unlock**

**NOTE:** If “Unlock All Doors 1st Press” is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver’s door handle. To select between “Unlock Driver Door 1st Press” and “Unlock All Doors 1st Press,” refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### **To Unlock From The Passenger Side:**

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all doors automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.

**NOTE:** All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver’s door unlock preference setting (“Unlock Driver Door 1st Press” or “Unlock All Doors 1st Press”).

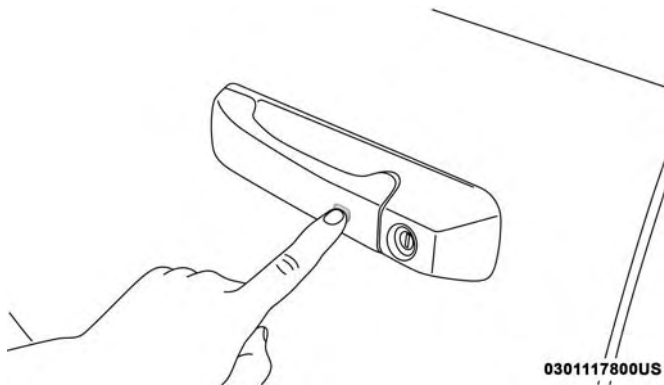
### **Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry Key Fob In Vehicle:**

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry key fob inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition switch is in the OFF position.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the door panel switch is used to lock the vehicle, once all open doors have been closed the vehicle checks the inside and outside of the vehicle for any valid Passive Entry key fobs. If one of the vehicle’s Passive Entry key fobs is detected inside the vehicle, and no other valid Passive Entry key fobs are detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry System automatically unlocks all vehicle doors and chirps the horn three times (on the third attempt ALL doors will lock and the Passive Entry key fob can be locked in the vehicle).

**To Lock The Vehicle's Doors:**

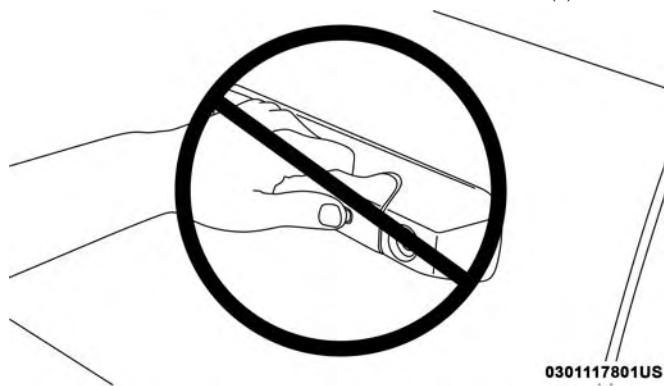
With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fobs within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the door handle lock button to lock all doors.



0301117800US

**Push The Door Handle Button To Lock**

Do NOT grab the door handle when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).



0301117801US

**Do NOT Grab The Door Handle When Locking****NOTE:**

- After pushing the door handle lock button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle, without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.
- The Passive Entry system will not operate if the key fob battery is dead.



The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the key fob lock button or the lock button located on the vehicle's interior door panel.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Automatic Door Locks — If Equipped

The auto door lock feature default condition is enabled. When enabled, the door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). The auto

door lock feature can be enabled or disabled by an authorized dealer per written request of the customer. Please see an authorized dealer for service.

### Automatic Doors Unlock — If Equipped

This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when either front door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the PARK position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of PARK and all doors closed).

### Automatic Doors Unlock Programming — If Equipped

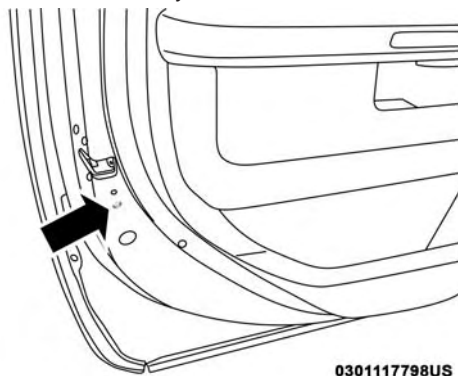
The Automatic Doors Unlock feature can be enabled or disabled as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" for further information.

**NOTE:** Use the Auto Unlock Doors feature in accordance with local laws.

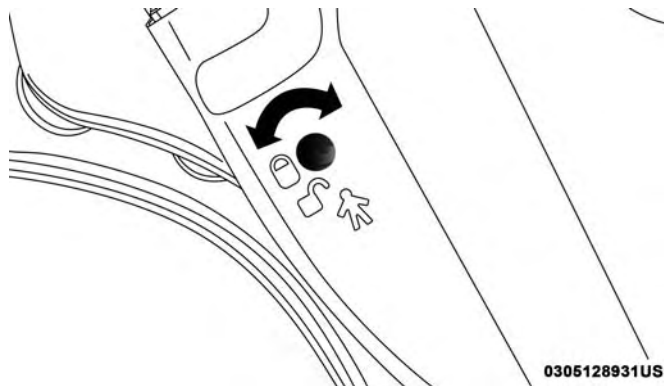
## Child-Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors (if equipped) of your vehicle have the Child-Protection Door Lock system.



### Child-Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, use a flat blade screwdriver (or emergency key) and rotate the dial to engage and disengage the Child-Protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.



Child Lock Control

### WARNING!

Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside with the Child-Protection locks are engaged (locked).

**NOTE:**

- After setting the Child-Protection Door Lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.
- For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the unlock position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

**SEATS**

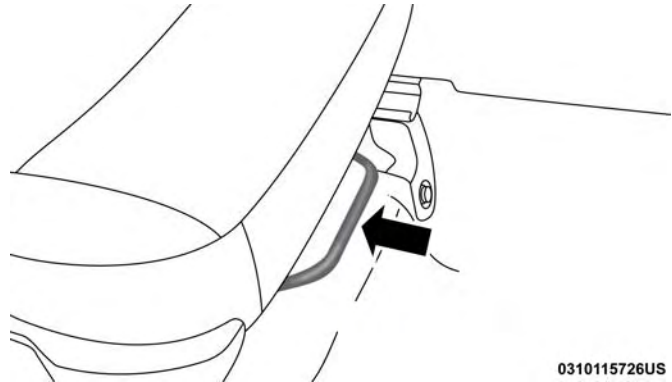
Seats are a part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

**Manual Front Seat Adjustment****Manual Front Seat Forward/Rearward Adjustment**

Both front seats are adjustable forward or rearward. The manual seat adjustment handle is located under the seat cushion at the front edge of each seat.

**3**

0310115726US

**Manual Seat Adjuster**

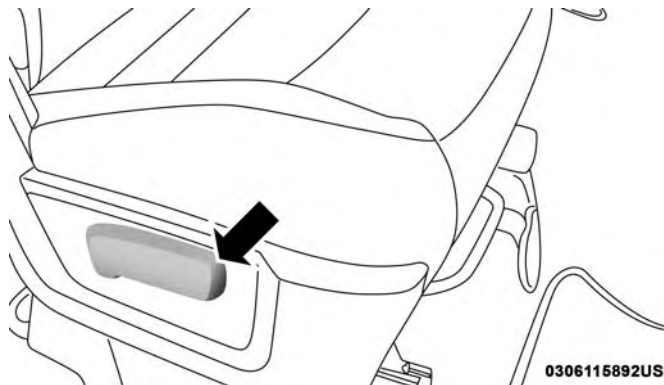
While sitting in the seat, pull up on the handle and slide the seat forward or rearward. Release the bar once you have reached the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure that the seat adjusters have latched.

**WARNING!**

- Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.
- Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.

**Manual Front Seat Recline Adjustment**

The recline lever is located on the outboard side of the seat. To recline the seat, lean forward slightly, lift the lever, lean back to the desired position and release the lever. To return the seatback to its normal upright position, lean forward and lift the lever. Release the lever once the seat back is in the upright position.

**Manual Recline Lever****WARNING!**

- Do not stand or lean in front of the seat while actuating the handle. The seatback may swing forward and hit you causing injury.
- To avoid injury, place your hand on the seatback and actuate the handle, then position the seatback in the desired position.

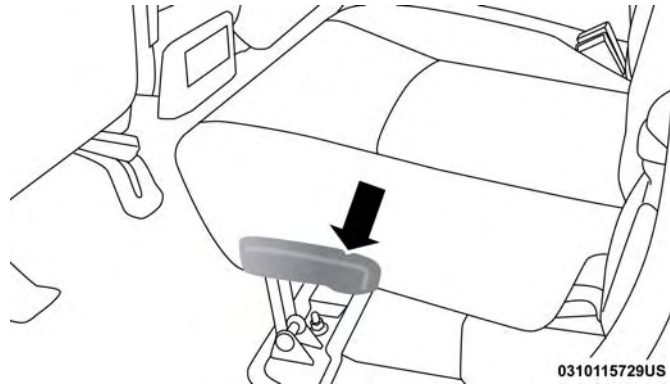
### 40-20-40 Front Bench Seat — If Equipped

The seat is divided into three segments. The outboard seat portions are each 40% of the total width of the seat. On some models, the back of the center portion (20%) easily folds down to provide an armrest/center storage compartment.

### Manual Rear Seat Adjustment

#### Reclining Rear Seats — If Equipped

The recliner handle is located on the outside of the seat cushion. To adjust the seatback, lift upward on the handle, lean back on the seatback and when you reach the desired position, release the handle.



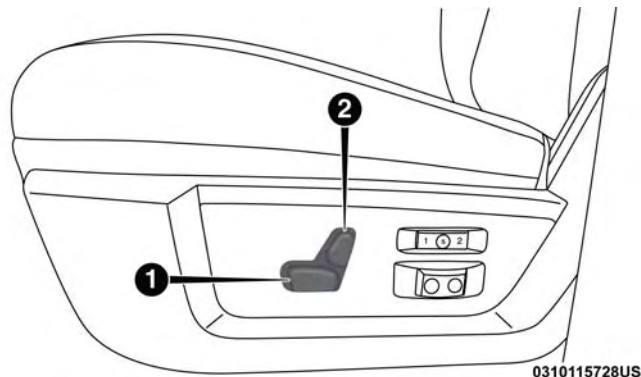
Rear Seat Recliner Handle

### WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

### Power Driver Seat Adjustment — If Equipped

Some models may be equipped with an eight-way power driver's seat. The power seat switches are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion. There are two power seat switches that are used to control the movement of the seat cushion and the seatback.



Power Seat Switches

- 1 — Power Seat Switch
- 2 — Power Seatback Switch

### Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

### Adjusting The Seat Up Or Down

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the rear of seat switch, the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

### Tilting The Seat Up Or Down

The angle of the seat cushion can be adjusted in four directions. Pull upward or push downward on the front or rear of the seat switch, the front or rear of the seat cushion will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

### Reclining The Seatback

The angle of the seatback can be adjusted forward or rearward. Push the seatback switch forward or rearward, the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

**WARNING!**

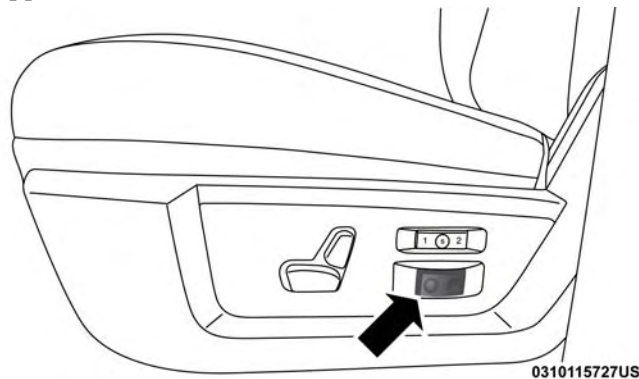
- Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.
- Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.
- Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

**CAUTION!**

Do not place any article under a power seat or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the seat controls. Seat travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the seat's path.

**Power Lumbar — If Equipped**

Vehicles equipped with power driver or passenger seats may be also be equipped with power lumbar. The power lumbar switch is located on the outboard side of the power seat. Push the switch forward to increase the lumbar support. Push the switch rearward to decrease the lumbar support.

**3**

Lumbar Control Switch

### **Power Passenger Seat Adjustment — If Equipped**

Some models are equipped with a six-way power passenger seat. The power seat switch is located on the outboard side of the seat. The switch is used to control the movement of the seat and seat cushion.

#### **Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward**

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

#### **Adjusting The Seat Up Or Down**

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the rear of seat switch, the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

#### **Tilting The Seat Up Or Down**

The angle of the seat cushion can be adjusted in four directions. Pull upward or push downward on the front or rear of the seat switch, the front or rear of the seat cushion will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

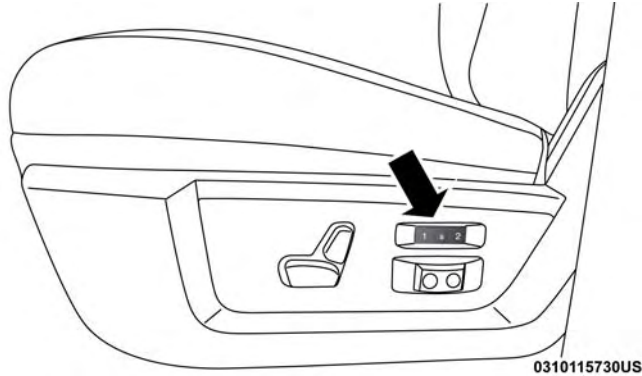
### **Driver Memory Seat — If Equipped**

This feature allows the driver to store up to two different memory profiles for easy recall through a memory switch. Each memory profile contains desired position settings for the driver's seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped) and a set of desired radio station presets. Your remote keyless entry key fob can also be programmed to recall the same positions when the unlock button is pushed.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle is equipped with two key fobs, one key fob can be linked to memory position 1 and the other key fob can be linked to memory position 2.



The memory seat buttons are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion.



**Memory Seat Buttons**

### **Programming The Memory Feature**

To create a new memory profile, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).

2. Adjust all memory profile settings to desired preferences (i.e., driver's seat, outside mirrors and radio station presets).
3. Push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch.
4. Within five seconds, push and release either of the memory buttons (1) or (2). The instrument cluster display will show which memory position has been set.

#### **NOTE:**

- Memory profiles can be set without the vehicle in PARK, but the vehicle must be in PARK to recall a memory profile.
- To set a memory profile to your key fob, refer to "Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory" in this section.

### Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory

Your key fobs can be programmed to recall one of two pre-programmed memory profiles by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

**NOTE:** Before programming your key fobs to memory the feature has to be selected.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the “Memory Linked To Fob” feature through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the “Key Fob Linked To Memory” feature through the instrument cluster display. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

To program your key fobs, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle’s ignition to the OFF position.
2. Select desired memory profile (1) or (2).

**NOTE:** If a memory profile has not already been set, refer to “Programming The Memory Feature” for instructions on how to set a memory profile.

3. Once the profile has been recalled, push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch, then push and release button (1) or (2) accordingly. “Memory Profile Set” (1 or 2) will display in the instrument cluster display.
4. Push and release the lock button on the key fob within 10 seconds.

**NOTE:** Your key fobs can be unlinked to your memory settings by pushing the set (S) button, and within 10 seconds, followed by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

## Memory Position Recall

### NOTE:

- For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, the vehicle speed must be lower than 5 mph (8 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted when the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), a message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display.
- For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle speed must be at 0 mph (0 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted with the vehicle speed above 0 mph (0 km/h), a message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

### *Driver One Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the memory switch, push memory button (1) on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 1.

### *Driver Two Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory setting for driver two using the memory switch, push memory button (2) on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver two using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 2.

A recall can be cancelled by pushing any of the memory buttons during a recall (S, 1, or 2). When a recall is cancelled, the driver's seat and the power pedals (if equipped) stop moving. A delay of one second will occur before another recall can be selected.

### **Easy Entry/Exit Seat**

This feature provides automatic driver's seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.

The distance the driver's seat moves depends on where you have the driver's seat positioned when you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go).

- When you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver's seat will move about 2.4 inches (60 mm) rearward if the driver's seat position is greater than or equal to 2.7 inches (67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition into the ACC or RUN position.
- When you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver's seat will move to a position 0.3 inches (7.7 mm) forward of the rear stop if the driver's seat position is between 0.9 inches and 2.7 inches (22.7 mm and 67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition to the ACC or RUN position.
- The Easy Entry/Easy Exit feature is disabled when the driver's seat position is less than 0.9 inches (22.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. At this position, there is no benefit to the driver by moving the seat for Easy Exit or Easy Entry.

Each stored memory setting will have an associated Easy Entry and Easy Exit position.

**NOTE:** The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The Easy Entry/Exit feature is enabled (or later disabled) through the programmable features in the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" for further information.

### Heated Seats — If Equipped

On some models, the front and rear seats may be equipped with heaters located in the seat cushions and seat backs.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.

**Front Heated Seats**

The front heated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.
- Press the heated seat button  a second time to turn the LO setting on.
- Press the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements off.

If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the display will change from HI to LO, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn off automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

**Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start**

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

**Rear Heated Seats**

On some models, the two outboard seats are equipped with heated seats. The heated seat switches for these seats are located on the rear of the center console.

There are two heated seat switches that allow the rear passengers to operate the seats independently. You can choose from HI, LO or OFF heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each switch indicate the level of heat in use. Two indicator lights will illuminate for HI, one for LO and none for OFF.

- Push the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.

- Push the heated seat button  a second time to turn the LO setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements off.

#### NOTE:

- Once a heat setting is selected, heat will be felt within two to five minutes.
- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

When the HI-level setting is selected, the heater will provide a boosted heat level during the first four minutes of operation. Then, the heat output will drop to the normal HI-level. If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the number of illuminated LEDs changes from two to one, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

#### Ventilated Seats — If Equipped

Located in the seat cushion are small fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and pull air through fine

perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at two speeds, HI and LO.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the ventilated seat button  once to choose HI.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a second time to choose LO.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a third time to turn the ventilated seat OFF.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.

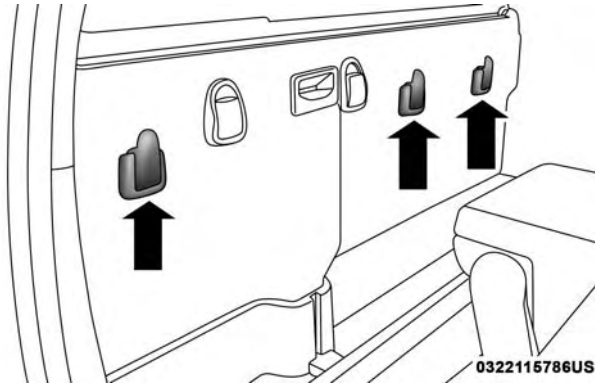
#### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

## Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Regular Cab Models)

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.



Grocery Bag Hooks

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

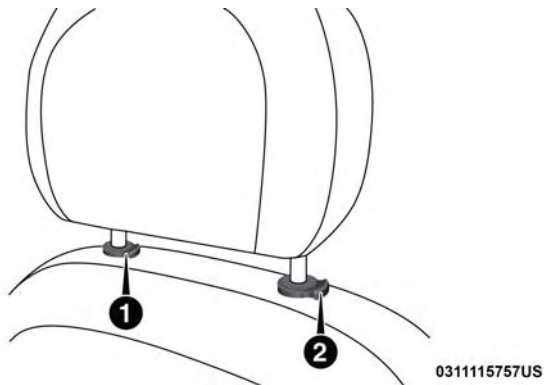
**3**

### WARNING!

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.
- Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

### Front Head Restraint Adjustment

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.



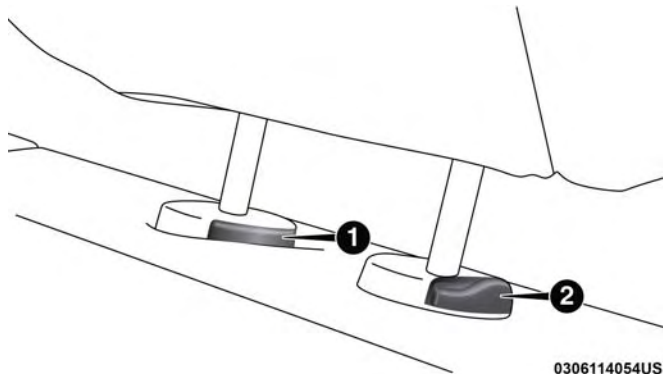
Adjustment Buttons

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button

**NOTE:** Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

### Rear Head Restraint Adjustment

The rear seats are equipped with adjustable and removable head restraints. To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.



Release/Adjustment Buttons

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button



**NOTE:**

- The rear center head restraint (Crew Cab and Quad Cab) has only one adjustment position that is used to aid in the routing of a tether. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Safety" for further information.
- Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

**Front Head Restraint Removal**

To remove the head restraint, raise it up as far as it can go. Then, push the adjustment button and the release button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes. Then, adjust it to the appropriate height.

**NOTE:** Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

**WARNING!**

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- **ALL** the head restraints **MUST** be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

**Rear Head Restraint Removal**

To remove the head restraint, push the adjustment button and the release button while pulling upward on the whole assembly. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and adjust it to the appropriate height.

**NOTE:** To remove outboard restraints, the rear seat bottom must be folded up.

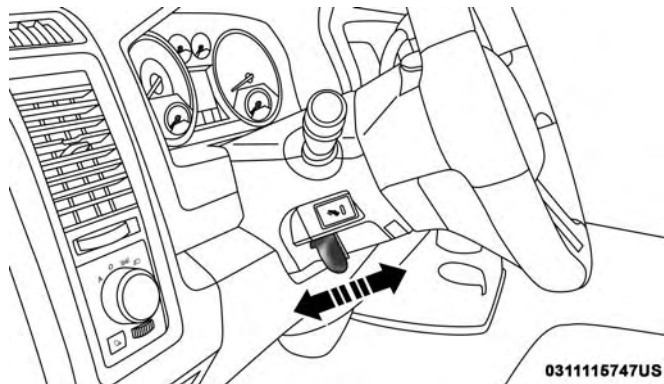
**WARNING!**

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints **MUST** be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

**STEERING WHEEL****Tilt Steering Column**

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the multifunction lever.

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Release the lever to lock the steering column firmly in place.



Tilt Steering Lever

**WARNING!**

**Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.**

## Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped

The steering wheel contains a heating element that helps warm your hands in cold weather. The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on, it will operate for an average of 80 minutes before automatically shutting off. This time may vary based on the temperature of the surrounding environment or the heated steering wheel may not turn on when it is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located on the center instrument panel below the climate controls. There are also buttons located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button  once to turn the heating element on.
- Press the heated steering wheel button  a second time to turn the heating element off.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

## Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### WARNING!

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.**
- **Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.**

## DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED

The adjustable pedals system is designed to allow a greater range of driver comfort for steering wheel tilt and seat position. This feature allows the brake, accelerator, and clutch pedals (if equipped) to move toward or away from the driver to provide improved position with the steering wheel.

The adjustable pedal switch is located to the left side of the steering column.



#### Adjustable Pedals Switch

- The pedals can be adjusted with the ignition OFF.
- The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Speed Control System is on. The following messages will appear on vehicles equipped with an instrument cluster display if the pedals are attempted to be adjusted when the system is locked out: "Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Cruise Control Engaged" or "Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Vehicle In Reverse".

#### NOTE:

- Always adjust the pedals to a position that allows full pedal travel.
- Further small adjustments may be necessary to find the best possible seat/pedal position.
- For vehicles equipped with Driver Memory Seat, you can use your remote keyless entry key fob or the memory switch on the driver's door trim panel to return the adjustable pedals to pre-programmed positions. Refer to "Driver Memory Seat" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.

#### WARNING!

**Do not adjust the pedals while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control and have an accident. Always adjust the pedals while the vehicle is parked.**

#### CAUTION!

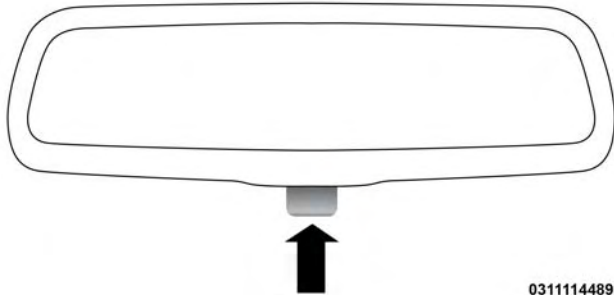
**Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move, as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.**

## MIRRORS

### Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped

The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Headlight glare from vehicles behind you can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward the windshield).



0311114489US

Adjusting Rearview Mirror

### Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

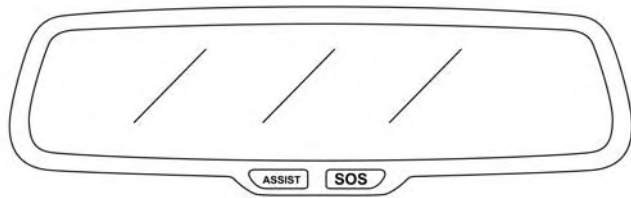
The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

**NOTE:** The Automatic Dimming feature is disabled when the vehicle is in REVERSE to improve rear view viewing.

The Automatic Dimming feature can be turned on or off through the touchscreen.

- Press the mirror dimmer button once to turn the feature on.
- Press the mirror dimmer button a second time to turn the feature off.



0306114048US

Automatic Dimming Mirror

### CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

### Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Display — If Equipped

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield button with a counterclockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the vehicle is placed into reverse gear, a video display illuminates to display the image generated by the rear view camera located on the tailgate handle. The auto dimming feature is also disabled to improve rear view viewing.



0322115791US

### Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirrors to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors, they can be turned off through the instrument cluster display or the Uconnect display. For further information, refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” or “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia”.

### WARNING!

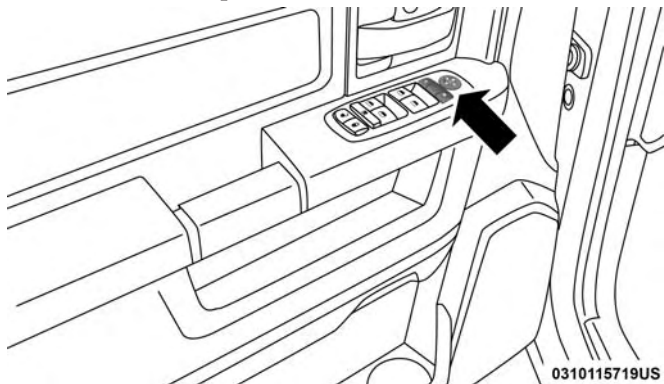
Vehicles and other objects seen in the passenger side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your passenger side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the passenger side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex passenger side mirror.

### Driver's Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

The driver's outside mirror will automatically adjust for glare from vehicles behind you. This feature is controlled by the inside automatic dimming mirror and will automatically adjust for headlight glare when the inside mirror adjusts.

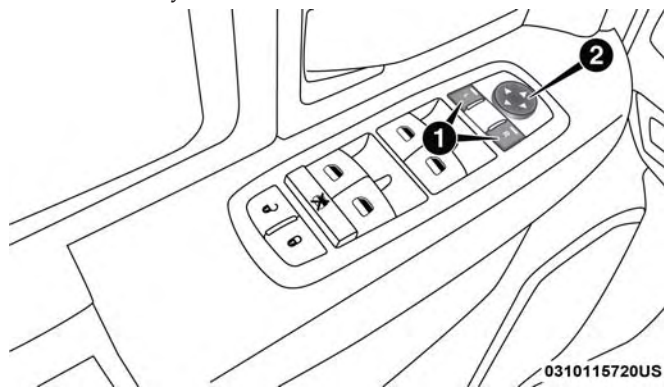
### Power Mirrors — If Equipped

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.



**Power Mirror Controls Location**

The power mirror controls consist of mirror select buttons and a four-way mirror control switch.



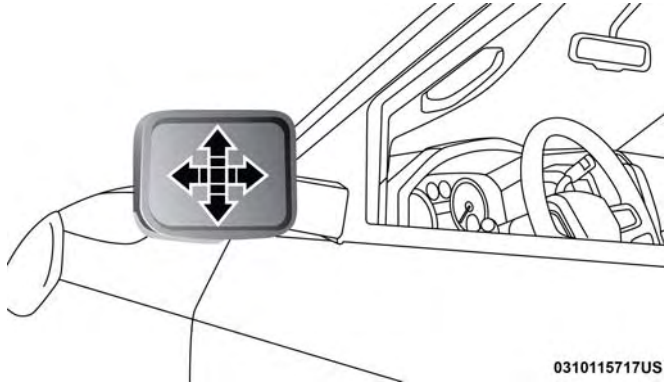
**Power Mirror Controls**

- 1 — Mirror Select Buttons
- 2 — Four-Way Mirror Control Switch



To adjust a mirror, push either the L (left) or R (right) button to select the mirror that you want to adjust.

Using the mirror control switch, push on any of the four arrows for the direction that you want the mirror to move.



0310115717US

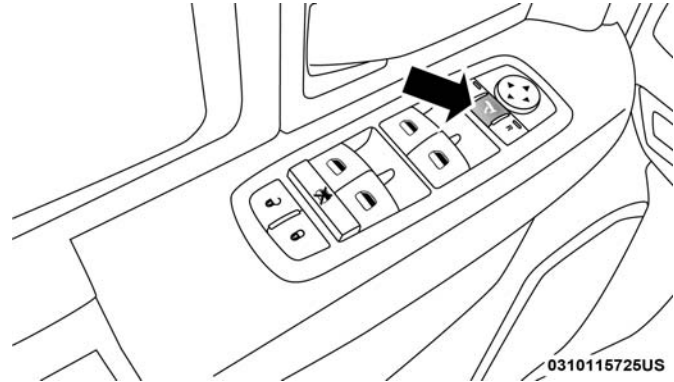
#### Power Mirror Movement

#### Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow — If Equipped

If equipped with power folding mirrors, they can be electrically folded rearward and unfolded into the drive position.

The switch for the power folding mirrors is located between the power mirror switches L (left) and R (right). Push the switch once and the mirrors will fold in, push the switch a second time and the mirrors will return to the normal driving position.

If the mirror is manually folded after electrically cycled, a potential extra button push is required to get the mirrors back to the home position. If the mirror does not electrically fold, check for ice or dirt build up at the pivot area which can cause excessive drag.



0310115725US

#### Power Folding Mirror Switch

### Resetting The Power Folding Outside Mirrors

You may need to reset the power folding mirrors if the following occurs:

- The mirrors are accidentally blocked while folding.
- The mirrors are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors come out of the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and vibrate at normal driving speeds.

#### To Reset The Power Folding Mirrors:

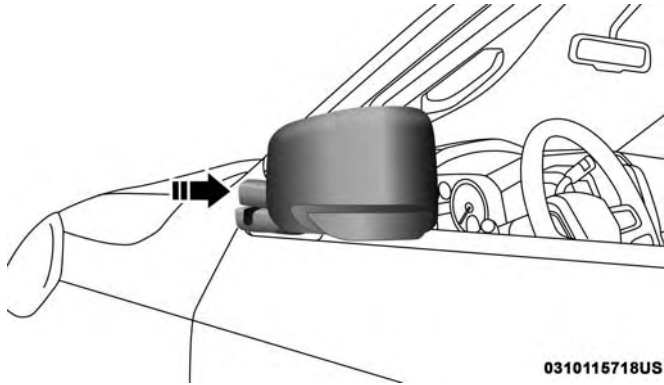
1. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to its full forward position.
2. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to the full retract position (this may require multiple button pushes). This resets them to their normal position.

#### NOTE:

- The power fold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to power fold the mirrors at high speeds they may not fully open or close. You should slow down to a moderate speed and complete the operation.
- When pushing the power fold button 10 or more times in one minute the system shuts down for one minute to protect the motors from over heating.

## Outside Mirrors Folding Feature

All outside mirrors are designed to be able to be manually folded both forward and rearward to prevent damage.



Folding Mirror

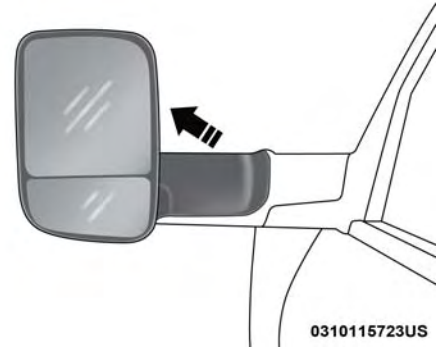
### CAUTION!

It is recommended to fold the mirrors into the full rearward position to resist damage when entering a car wash or a narrow location.

## Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped

These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped in or out).

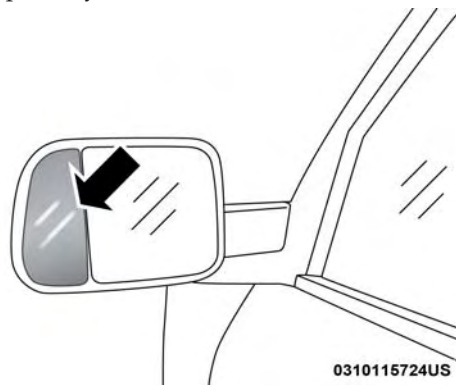
3



Trailer Towing Position

**NOTE:** Fold the trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.

A small blindspot mirror is located next to main mirror and can be adjusted separately.



Blindspot Mirror

### Heated Mirrors — If Equipped



These mirrors are heated to melt frost or ice. This feature will be activated whenever you turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped). Refer to “Climate Controls” in this section for further information.

### Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped

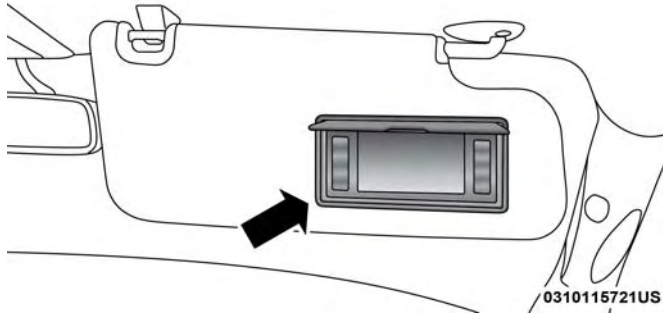
Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse provides automatic outside mirror positioning which will aid the driver’s view of the ground rearward of the front doors. The outside mirrors will move slightly downward from the present position when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE. The outside mirrors will then return to the original position when the vehicle is shifted out of the REVERSE position. Each stored memory setting will have an associated Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse position.

**NOTE:** The Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse feature is not turned on when delivered from the factory.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped

Illuminated vanity mirrors are located on each sun visor. To use the mirror, rotate the sun visor down and swing the mirror cover upward. The lights will turn on automatically. Closing the mirror cover turns off the light.

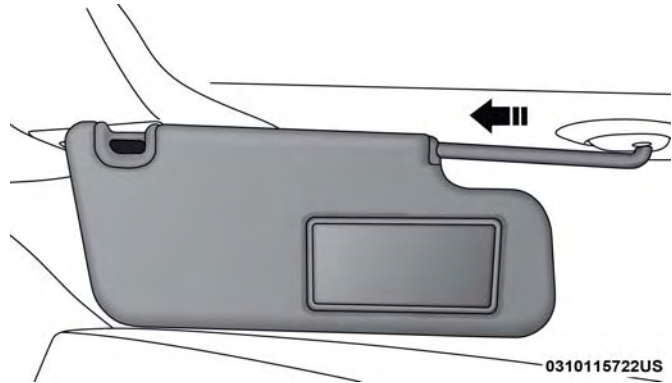


Illuminated Vanity Mirror

### "Slide-On-Rod" Features Of Sun Visor — If Equipped

The sun visor "Slide-On-Rod" feature allows for additional flexibility in positioning the visor to block out the sun.

To use the "Slide-On-Rod" feature, rotate the sun visor downward and unclip it. Pull the sun visor along the "Slide-On-Rod" until the sun visor is in the desired position.

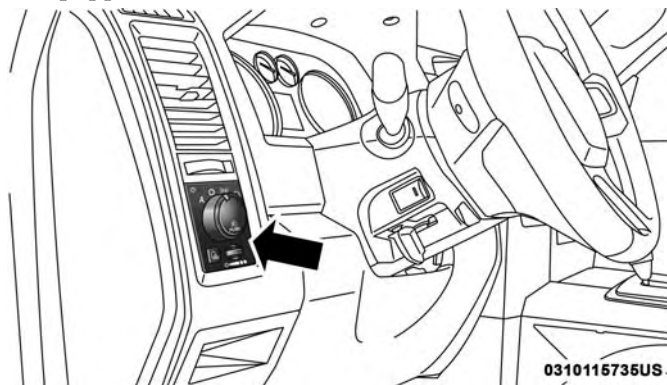


"Slide-On-Rod" Extender

## EXTERIOR LIGHTS

### Headlight Switch

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel. The headlight switch controls the operation of the headlights, parking lights, instrument panel lights, cargo lights and fog lights (if equipped).



Headlight Switch Location

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight and fog light (if equipped) lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass lights. Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors they can be turned off through the instrument cluster display or the Uconnect radio. For further information refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" and "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia".

### CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

## Headlights

To turn on the headlights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the headlight position. When the headlight switch is on, the parking lights, taillights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are also turned on. To turn off the headlights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (off) position.



0311116387US

Headlight Position

## Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped

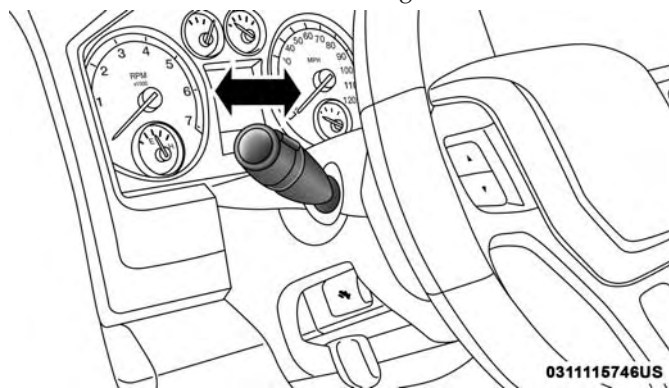
The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant "lights on" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than half of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn off. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle may turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

## Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

## High/Low Beam Switch

Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beam. Pulling the multifunction lever back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.



High/Low Beam Switch

## Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped

The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera

mounted on the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

### NOTE:

- The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off by selecting “ON” under “Auto Dim High Beams” within your Uconnect settings, as well as turning the headlight switch to the AUTO position. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.
- Broken, muddy, or obstructed headlights and taillights of vehicles in the field of view will cause headlights to remain on longer (closer to the vehicle). Also, dirt, film, and other obstructions on the windshield or camera lens will cause the system to function improperly.

If the windshield or Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control mirror is replaced, the mirror must be re-aimed to ensure proper performance. See a local authorized dealer.

### To Activate

1. The Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.



2. Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO headlight position.
3. Push the multifunction lever away from you (toward front of vehicle) to engage the high beam mode.

**NOTE:** This system will not activate until the vehicle is at or above 20 mph (32 km/h).

### To Deactivate

1. Pull the multifunction lever toward you (or rearward in vehicle) to manually deactivate the system (normal operation of low beams).
2. Push back on the multifunction lever to reactivate the system.

### Flash-To-Pass

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by lightly pulling the multifunction lever toward you. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on, and remain on, until the lever is released.

### Automatic Headlights — If Equipped

This system automatically turns the headlights on or off according to ambient light levels. To turn the system on, rotate the headlight switch counterclockwise to the AUTO

position. When the system is on, the headlight time delay feature is also on. This means the headlights will stay on for up to 90 seconds after you place the ignition into the OFF position. The headlight time delay can be programmed 0/30/60/90 seconds. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.



0311115741US

### Automatic Headlight Position

To turn the automatic system off, move the headlight switch out of the AUTO position.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running before the headlights will turn on in the Automatic Mode.

## Parking Lights And Panel Lights



To turn on the parking lights and instrument panel lights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise. To turn off the parking lights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (off) position.

### Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)

When this feature is active, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on if the headlight switch is placed in the AUTO position. In addition, the headlights will turn off when the wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature.

**NOTE:** This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further information.

## Headlight Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlight delay that will leave the headlights on for approximately up to 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned off while the headlight switch is on, and then the headlight switch is cycled off. Headlight delay can be canceled by either turning the headlight switch on then off, or by turning the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

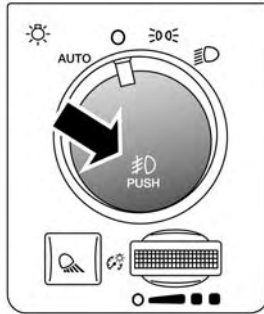
**NOTE:** This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further information.

## Lights-On Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

## Fog Lights — If Equipped

The fog lights are turned on by rotating the headlight switch to the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control.

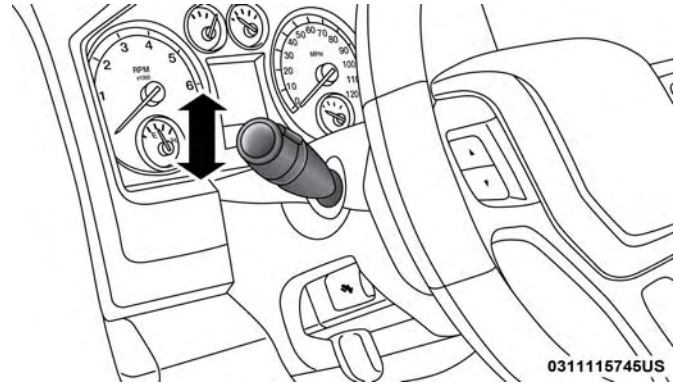


Fog Light Switch

The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are on or when the vehicle headlights are on low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster display will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the off position, or the high beam is selected.

## Turn Signals

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster display will flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.



Turn Signal Lever

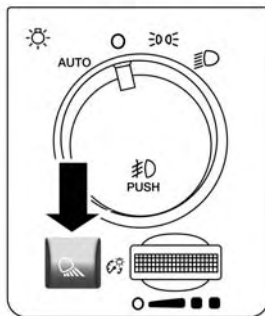
**NOTE:** If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.

## Lane Change Assist — If Equipped

Tap the multifunction lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

## Cargo Light

The cargo light is turned on by pushing on the cargo light button.



0311115744US

### Cargo Light Button

The cargo light will also turn on for approximately 60 seconds when the unlock button on a key fob is pushed, as part of the Illuminated Entry feature.

## Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, load shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is OFF and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated all the way up to the dome on position for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

**NOTE:** Battery saver mode is canceled if the ignition is ON.

If the headlights remain on while the ignition is cycled OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after eight minutes. If the headlights are turned on and left on for eight minutes while the ignition is OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

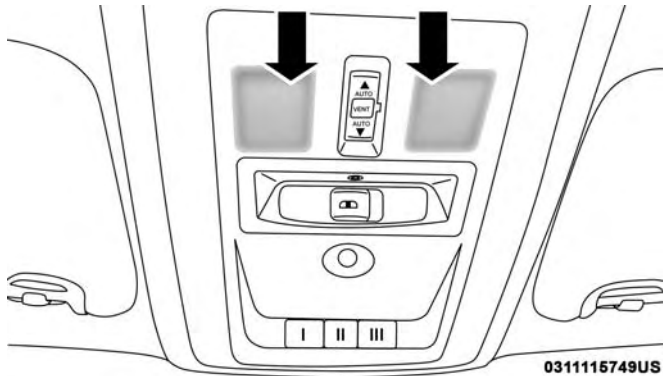
## INTERIOR LIGHTS

### Courtesy Lights

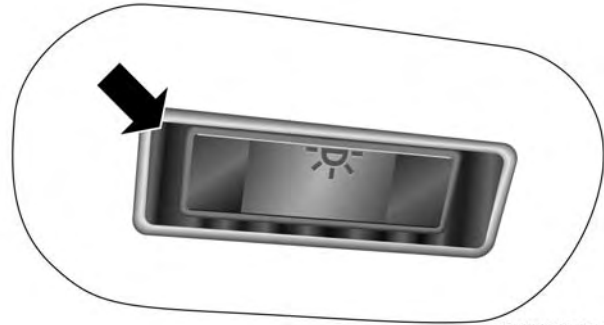
Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the bottom of the switch) is rotated to the far right detent position. If your vehicle is equipped with Remote Keyless Entry, and the unlock button is pushed on the key fob, the courtesy and dome lights will turn on.

## Courtesy/Reading Lights

Both lights in the overhead console and rear passenger compartment will illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (full right position), or when the unlock button is pushed on the Remote Keyless Entry key fob, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pushing on the corresponding lens.



Front Courtesy/Reading Lights



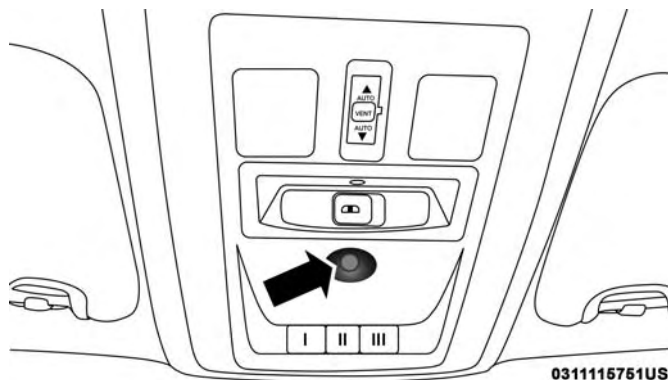
3

### Rear Passenger Courtesy/Reading Light

**NOTE:** The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pushed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before exiting the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the ignition is turned off, they will automatically turn off after 15 minutes.

## Ambient Light

The overhead console is equipped with an ambient light feature. This light casts illumination for improved visibility of the floor console area.

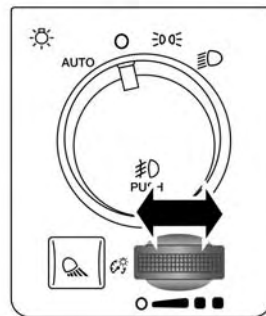


0311115751US

Ambient Light

## Dimmer Control

The brightness of the instrument panel as well as the ambient lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control to the right (brighter) or to the left (dimmer).



0311115743US

Dimmer Control

### "Party Mode"

When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way left, to the off detent, will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the "Party" mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

### "Parade Mode"

When the headlights are on you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control to the right until

you hear a click. This feature is termed the “Parade” mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the dimming of the touchscreen is programmable through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further details.

### Illuminated Approach

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the key fob to unlock the doors or open any door.

This feature also turns on the approach lighting in the outside mirrors (if equipped). Refer to “Mirrors” in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle” for further information.

The lights will fade to off after approximately 30 seconds, or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned to ON/RUN from the OFF position.

The front courtesy overhead console and door courtesy lights will not turn off if the dimmer control is in the “Dome ON” position (rotate vertical thumb wheel all the way to the top detent).

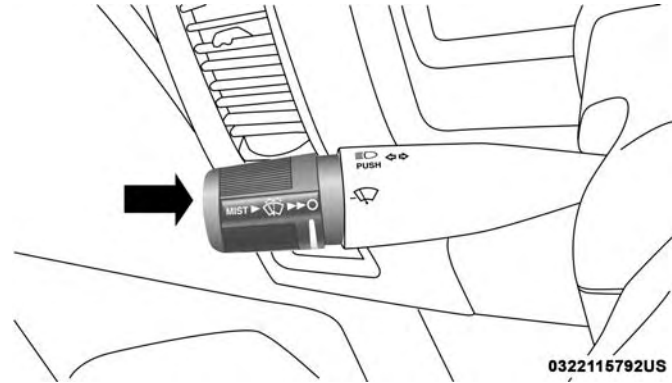
The illuminated entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the “Dome OFF” position (rotate vertical thumb wheel all the way to the bottom detent).

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors, they can be turned off by moving the instrument panel dimmer into the “Dome Defeat” detent position.

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the lever to select the desired wiper speed.



Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch

Rotate the end of the lever upward, to the first detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation. Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.

### Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob upward to the first detent.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every one second. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

### Windshield Washers

To use the windshield washer, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the second detent. Washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will operate for two to three cycles after the washer knob is released from this position.

If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed while in the off position, the wiper will turn on and cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

### **WARNING!**

**Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.**

### Mist Feature

When a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle is needed, push the washer knob, located



on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the first detent and release. The wipers will cycle one time and automatically shut off.

**NOTE:** The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

### Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped

This feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of five settings to activate this feature.

**NOTE:** This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further information.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position 1 is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position 5 is the most sensitive. Position 3 should be used for normal rain conditions. Positions 1 and 2 can be used if the driver desires less

wiper sensitivity. Positions 4 and 5 can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the O (off) position when not using the system.

#### NOTE:

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice, or dried salt water is present on the windshield.
- Use of Rain-X or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

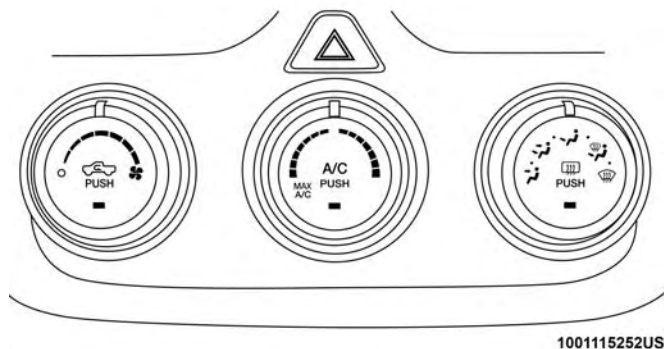
- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 0 mph (0 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).

- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), or the gear selector is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.
- **Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed the ignition switch in the RUN position, Rain Sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS

### Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen

The controls for the manual heating and air conditioning system in this vehicle consist of a series of outer rotary dials and inner push knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



Manual Climate Controls Without A Touchscreen

## Manual Climate Control Descriptions

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>MAX A/C Setting</b><br/>Rotate the Temperature Control Knob counterclockwise until it is set to MAX A/C. This is the coldest setting and will put the A/C to its maximum power.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | <p><b>A/C Button</b><br/>Push the A/C button to engage the Air Conditioning (A/C). A LED will illuminate when the A/C system is engaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|  | <p><b>Recirculation Button</b><br/>Push and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</li> <li>• The use of the Recirculation mode in cold or damp weather could cause windows to fog on the inside, because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. Select the outside air position for maximum defogging.</li> <li>• Recirculation can be used in all modes except for Defrost.</li> <li>• The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection.</li> </ul> |

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>Front Defrost Setting</b></p> <p>Turn the Mode Control knob to the Defrost mode. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging.</p>                                                                  |
|  | <p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Push and release the Rear Defrost Control button to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>                       |
|  | <p><b>Temperature Control</b></p> <p>Use this control knob to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Rotating the knob counterclockwise, from top center into the blue area of the scale, indicates cooler temperatures. Rotating the knob clockwise, into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures.</p> |
|  | <p><b>Blower Control</b></p> <p>There are seven blower speeds. Use this control knob to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The blower speed increases as you move the control clockwise from the off position.</p>                                                                               |

| Icon                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                              | <p><b>Modes Control:</b><br/>Rotate the Mode Control Knob to change the airflow distribution mode. The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, defrost outlets and demist outlets. The Mode settings are as follows:</p>                                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>Panel Mode</b></p>     | <p><b>Panel Mode</b><br/>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p> |
| <p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p>  | <p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b><br/>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Bi-Level mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.</p>                                                                  |
| <p><b>Floor Mode</b></p>     | <p><b>Floor Mode</b><br/>Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| Icon                                                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mix Mode</b><br> | <b>Mix Mode</b><br>Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield. |

### Economy Mode

If ECONOMY mode is desired, push the A/C button to turn off the LED indicator and the A/C compressor. Rotate the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level or Floor modes.

## Automatic Climate Controls With A Touchscreen

3



1001115253US

Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display With Automatic Temperature Controls



0313129069US

Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With Automatic Temperature Controls



## Control Descriptions

**NOTE:** Icons and descriptions can vary based upon vehicle equipment.

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>MAX A/C Button</b><br>Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when MAX A/C is on. Performing this function again will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off. |
|  | <b>A/C Button</b><br>Press and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is on.                                                             |

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>Recirculation Button</b><br/>Press and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</li><li>• The use of the Recirculation mode in cold or damp weather could cause windows to fog on the inside, because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. Select the outside air position for maximum defogging.</li><li>• Recirculation can be used in all modes except for Defrost.</li><li>• The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection.</li></ul> |
| <b>AUTO</b>                                                                       | <p><b>AUTO Button — If Equipped</b><br/>Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Toggling this function will cause the system to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to “Automatic Operation” within this section for more information.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>Front Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Press and release the touchscreen button, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is on. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level may increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. When toggling the front defrost mode button, the climate system will return to previous setting.</p> |
|  | <p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Push and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| Icon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Uconnect 3</p>  <p>Uconnect 4C/4C<br/>NAV</p>  | <p><b>Driver and Passenger Temperature Up and Down Buttons</b></p> <p>Provides the driver and passenger with independent temperature control. Push the up arrow button on the faceplate, press the up arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow button on the touchscreen for warmer temperature settings. Push the down arrow button on the faceplate, press the down arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button on the touchscreen for cooler temperature settings. When the SYNC feature is active, the passenger's temperature will move up and down with the driver's temperature, when it is increased and decreased, respectively.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Temperature numbers will only be displayed if the system is equipped with Automatic Temperature Control.</p> |
| <p><b>SYNC</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p><b>SYNC Button — If Equipped</b></p> <p>Press the SYNC button on the touchscreen to toggle the SYNC feature on/off. The SYNC indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. SYNC is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. The SYNC feature also synchronizes the rear passengers' temperature to the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger temperature setting while in SYNC will automatically exit this feature.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Icon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Faceplate Knob</p>  <p>Touchscreen Buttons</p>  | <p><b>Blower Control</b></p> <p>Blower Control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. The speeds can be selected using either the blower control knob on the faceplate or the buttons on the touchscreen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Faceplate:</b> The blower speed increases as you turn the blower control knob clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.</li> <li>• <b>Touchscreen:</b> Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons. For Uconnect 3, press the button to access the blower screen and control the blower.</li> </ul> |
| <p><b>Panel Mode</b></p>                                                                                                                                        | <p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| Icon                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Bi-Level Mode</b><br> | <b>Bi-Level Mode</b><br>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Bi-Level mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets. |
| <b>Floor Mode</b><br>    | <b>Floor Mode</b><br>Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Mix Mode</b><br>      | <b>Mix Mode</b><br>Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.                                                      |
| <b>OFF</b>                                                                                                | <b>Climate Control OFF Button</b><br>Press and release this button on the touchscreen, or push the faceplate button, to turn the Climate Control System off.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## Climate Control Functions

### A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level, or Floor modes.

#### NOTE:

- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode, and increase blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from the front of the radiator and through the condenser.

### MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button illuminates when MAX A/C is on.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the selected setting and MAX A/C to exit.

### Recirculation

In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield.

On systems with Manual Climate Controls, the Recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation is disabled automatically if this mode is selected. Attempting to use Recirculation while in this mode causes the LED in the control button to blink and then turns off.

## **Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) — If Equipped**

### **Automatic Operation**

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate, or the AUTO button on the touchscreen on the Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) Panel.
2. Next, adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature control buttons. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the settings. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.

### **NOTE:**

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings for cold or hot vehicles. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.
- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the US/Metric customer-programmable feature. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode during cold start-ups, the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

### **Manual Operation Override**

This system offers a full complement of manual override features. The AUTO symbol in the front ATC display will be turned off when the system is being used in the manual mode.



## Operating Tips

**NOTE:** Refer to the chart at the end of this section for suggested control settings for various weather conditions.

### Summer Operation

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended.

### Winter Operation

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration of coolant is used. Use of the Air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended, because it may cause window fogging.

### Vacation/Storage

Before you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes, in fresh air with the blower setting on high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

## Window Fogging

Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside in mild, rainy, and/or humid weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

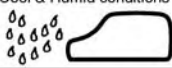
## Outside Air Intake

Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions, such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, and if they enter the plenum, they could plug the water drains. In Winter months, make sure the air intake is clear of ice, slush, and snow.

## Cabin Air Filter

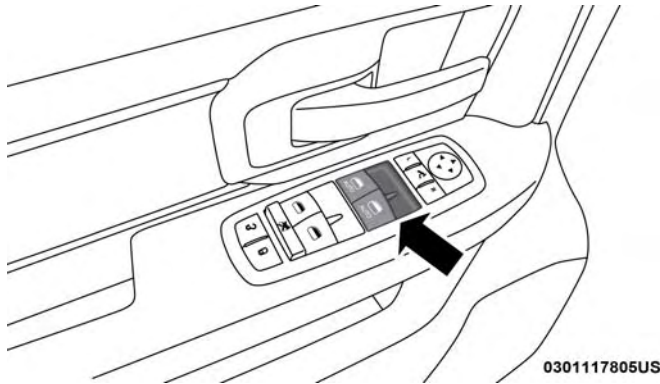
The climate control system filters out dust and pollen from the air. Contact an authorized dealer to service your cabin air filter, and to have it replaced when needed.

## Operating Tips Chart

| WEATHER                                                                                                                            | CONTROL SETTINGS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hot weather and vehicle interior is very hot<br> | Set the mode control to  ,  on, and blower on high. Roll down the windows for a minute to flush out the hot air. Once comfort is achieved adjust controls for comfort. |
| Warm weather<br>                                 | Turn  on and set the mode control to the  position.                                                                                                                    |
| Cool Sunny                                                                                                                         | Operate in  position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Cool & Humid conditions<br>                      | Set the mode control to  and turn on  to keep windows clear.                                                                                                           |
| Cold Weather                                                                                                                       | Set the mode control to the  position. If windshield fogging starts to occur, move the control towards the  position.                                                  |

## WINDOWS

### Power Windows — If Equipped



**Power Window Switches**

The power window controls located on the driver's door trim panel have up—down switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control and on the rear doors of the Crew Cab models. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC position, and for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or until a front door is opened.

**NOTE:** The Key Off Power Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF. This feature is cancelled when either front door is opened.

### **WARNING!**

**Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.**

### **Auto-Down**

Both the driver and front passenger window switch have an Auto-Down feature. Push the window switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto-Down movement, operate the switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

To stop the window from going all the way down during the Auto-Down operation, pull up on the switch briefly.

To open the window part way, push to the switch to the first detent and release it when you want the window to stop.

### **Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection (4-Door Models Driver And Front Passenger Door Only) — If Equipped**

Pull the window switch fully upward to the second detent, release, and the window will go up automatically.

To stop the window from going all the way up during the Auto-Up operation, push down on the switch briefly.

To close the window part way, lift the window switch to the first detent and release when you want the window to stop.

**NOTE:** If the window runs into any obstacle during the Auto-Closure, it will reverse direction and then go back down. Remove the obstacle and use the window switch again to close the window. Any impact due to rough road conditions may trigger the auto reverse function unexpectedly during auto closure. If this happens, pull the switch lightly to the first detent and hold to close the window manually.

### **WARNING!**

**There is no anti-pinch protection when the window is almost closed. Be sure to clear all objects from the window before closing.**

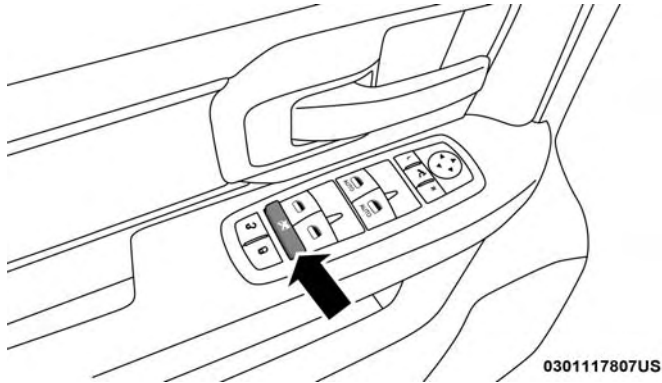
### **Reset Auto-Up**

Should the Auto-Up feature stop working, the window may need to be reset. To reset Auto-Up:

1. Make sure the door is fully closed.
2. Pull the window switch up to close the window completely and continue to hold the switch up for an additional two seconds after the window is closed.
3. Push the window switch down firmly to the second detent to open the window completely and continue to hold the switch down for an additional two seconds after the window is fully open.

### Window Lockout Switch (4-Door Models Only)

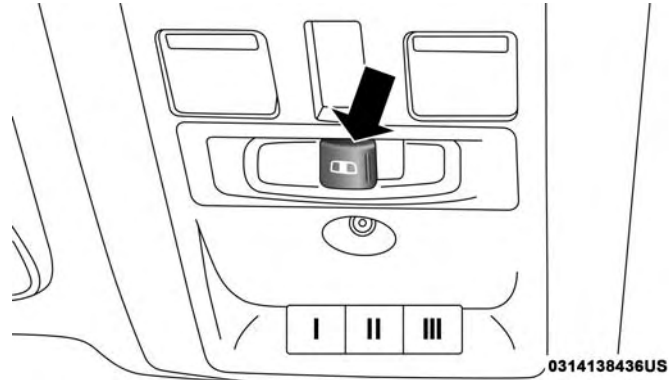
The window lockout switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the rear passenger doors. To disable the window controls on the rear passenger doors, push the window lock switch into the latched or down position. To enable the window controls, push the window lock switch again and return the switch to the released or up position.



**Window Lockout Switch**

### Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

The switch for the power sliding rear window is located on the overhead console.



3

**Rear Window Switch**

Push the switch to the right to open the glass. Pull the switch to the left to close the glass.

### Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

## Wind Buffeting

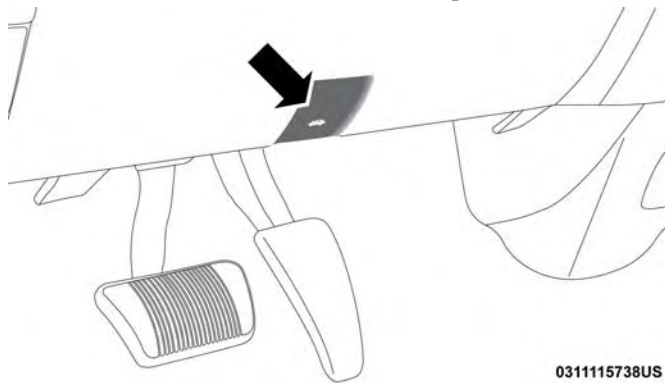
Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting or open any window.

## HOOD

### To Open The Hood

To open the hood, two latches must be released.

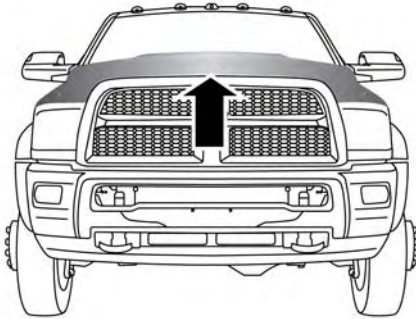
1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.



Hood Release

0311115738US

2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the hood and push the safety latch lever to the left to release it, before raising the hood.



0322118266US

Safety Latch Location

### To Close The Hood

Lower the hood to approximately 12 inches (30 cm) from the engine compartment and drop it. Make sure that the hood is completely closed.

#### **WARNING!**

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

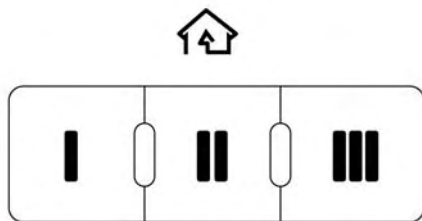
#### **CAUTION!**

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED

HomeLink replaces up to three hand-held transmitters that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting or home security systems. The HomeLink unit is powered by your vehicle's 12 Volt battery.

The HomeLink buttons that are located in the overhead console designate the three different HomeLink channels.



0449097657US

### HomeLink Buttons

**NOTE:** HomeLink is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.

## WARNING!

- Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are training the universal transceiver. Do not train the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a “stop and reverse” feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com) for safety information or assistance.
- Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while training the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.

**NOTE:** Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a “stop and reverse” feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for safety information or assistance.



## Before You Begin Programming HomeLink

Ensure your vehicle is parked outside of the garage before you begin programming.

For efficient programming and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal it is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device that is being programmed to the HomeLink system.

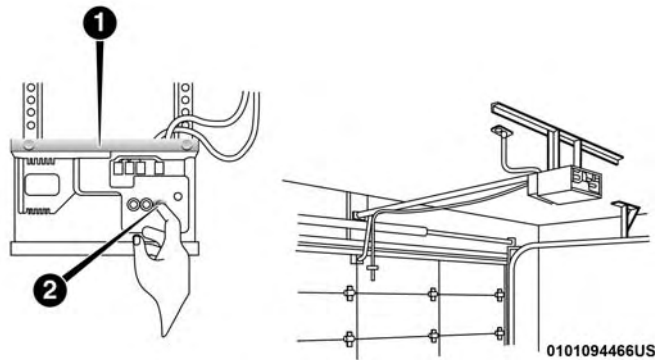
To erase the channels place the ignition in the ON/RUN position and push and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up to 20 seconds. The instrument cluster display will display "CLEARING CHANNELS." Release the buttons when "CHANNELS CLEARED" appears on the display.

### NOTE:

- For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure while programming HomeLink with the engine ON that your vehicle is outside of your garage, or that the garage door remains open at all times.
- Erasing all channels should only be performed when programming HomeLink for the first time. Do not erase channels when programming additional buttons.
- If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for information or assistance.

## Programming A Rolling Code

For programming garage door openers that were manufactured after 1995. These garage door openers can be identified by the "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button located where the hanging antenna is attached to the garage door opener. It is NOT the button that is normally used to open and close the door. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.



Training The Garage Door Opener

- 1 — Door Opener  
2 — Training Button

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure while programming HomeLink with the engine ON that your vehicle is outside of your garage, or that the garage door remains open at all times.

2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand - held transmitter button.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the instrument cluster display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

**NOTE:**

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If "DID NOT TRAIN" appears in the Instrument Cluster Display, repeat from Step 2.

5. At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the "LEARN" or "TRAINING" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the garage door opener/device motor. Firmly push and release the "LEARN" or "TRAINING" button. On some garage door openers/devices there may be a light that blinks when the garage door opener/device is in the LEARN/TRAIN mode.

**NOTE:** You have 30 seconds in which to initiate the next step after the LEARN button has been pushed.

6. Return to the vehicle and push the programmed HomeLink button twice (holding the button for two seconds each time). The instrument cluster display will show "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the garage door opener/device activates, programming is complete.

**NOTE:** If the garage door opener/device does not activate, push the button a third time (for two seconds) to complete the training.

To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

## Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with "Programming A Rolling Code" step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

## Programming A Non-Rolling Code

For programming Garage Door Openers manufactured before 1995.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.
2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand - held transmitter button.

4. Continue to hold both buttons until the instrument cluster display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

#### NOTE:

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
  - If the instrument cluster display shows "DID NOT TRAIN", repeat from Step 2.
5. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button. The instrument cluster display will display "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the garage door opener/device activates, programming is complete.

To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

#### Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Non-Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with "Programming A Non-Rolling Code" step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

#### Canadian/Gate Operator Programming

For programming transmitters in Canada/United States that require the transmitter signals to "time-out" after several seconds of transmission.

Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

It may be helpful to unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible overheating of the garage door or gate motor.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:** For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure while programming HomeLink with the engine ON that your vehicle is outside of your garage, or that the garage door remains open at all times.

2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button while you push and release ("cycle"), your hand - held transmitter every two seconds.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the instrument cluster display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

**NOTE:**

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If the instrument cluster display shows "DID NOT TRAIN", repeat from Step 2.

5. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button. The instrument cluster display will display "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the device is plugged in and activates, programming is complete.

If you unplugged the garage door opener/device for programming, plug it back in at this time.

### **Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Canadian/Gate Operator)**

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:** For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure while programming HomeLink with the engine ON that your vehicle is outside of your garage, or that the garage door remains open at all times.

2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the instrument cluster display shows "CHANNEL # TRAINING" **Do not release the button.**

3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with “Canadian/ Gate Operator Programming” Step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

### Using HomeLink

To operate, push and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the programmed device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.) The hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

### Security

It is advised to erase all channels before you sell or turn in your vehicle.

To erase the channels press and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up 20 seconds. The instrument cluster display will display “CLEARING CHANNELS.” Release the buttons when the instrument cluster display shows “CHANNELS CLEARED.”

The HomeLink Universal Transceiver is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.

### Troubleshooting Tips

If you are having trouble programming HomeLink, here are some of the most common solutions:

- Replace the battery in the Garage Door Opener hand-held transmitter.
- Push the LEARN button on the Garage Door Opener to complete the training for a Rolling Code.
- Did you unplug the device for programming and remember to plug it back in?

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for information or assistance.

### WARNING!

- **Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.**
- **Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a “stop and reverse” feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for safety information or assistance.

**General Information**

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

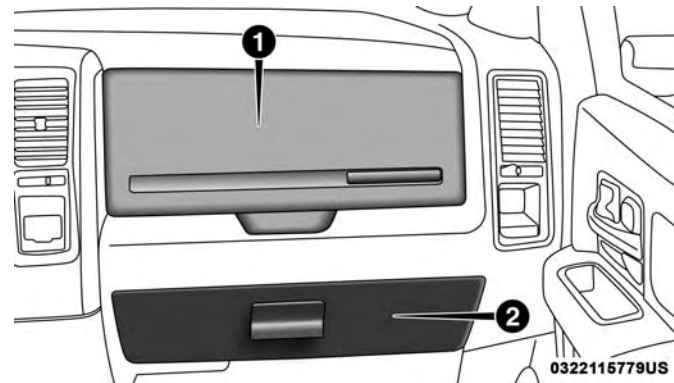
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

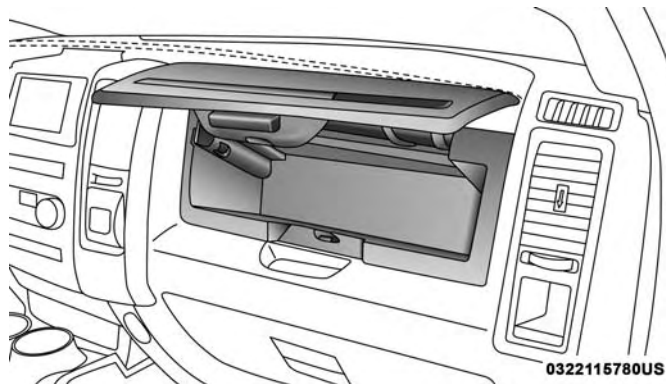
**INTERNAL EQUIPMENT****Storage****Glove Compartment**

The glove compartment is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel and features both an upper and lower storage area.

**Glove Compartment**

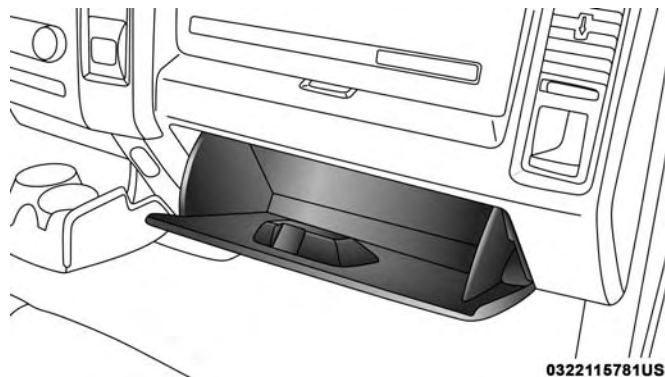
- 1 — Upper Glove Compartment  
2 — Lower Glove Compartment

To open the upper glove compartment, push upward on the handle release. The glove compartment door will automatically open.



Upper Glove Compartment

To open the lower glove compartment, pull the release handle.



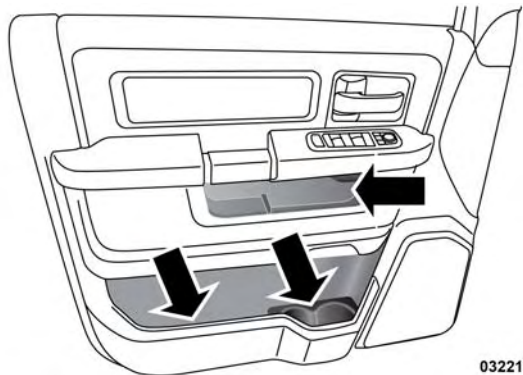
Lower Glove Compartment



## Door Storage

### Front Door Storage — If Equipped

Storage areas and bottle holders (driver's side only) are located in the door trim panels.

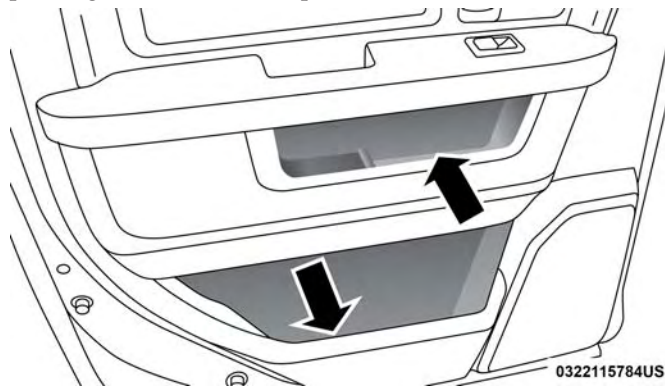


0322115783US

Front Door Storage

### Rear Door Storage — If Equipped

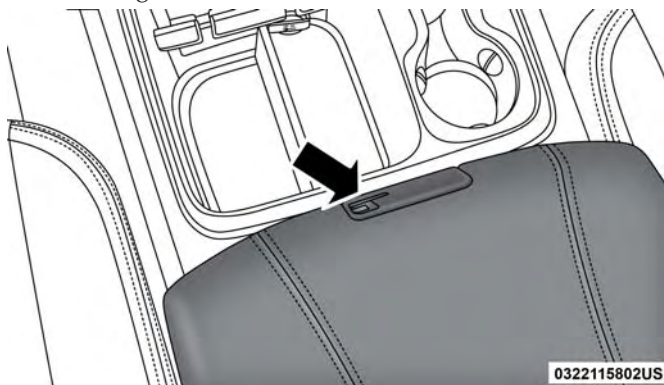
Storage compartments are located in both the driver and passenger rear door trim panels.



Rear Door Storage

### Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped

The center storage compartment is located between the driver and passenger seats. The storage compartment provides an armrest and contains both an upper and lower storage area.

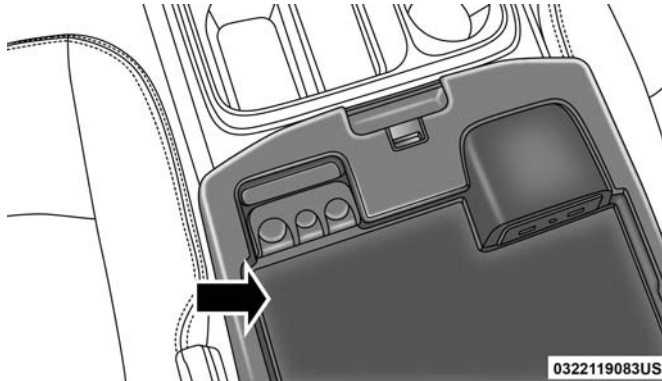


Center Storage Compartment

### WARNING!

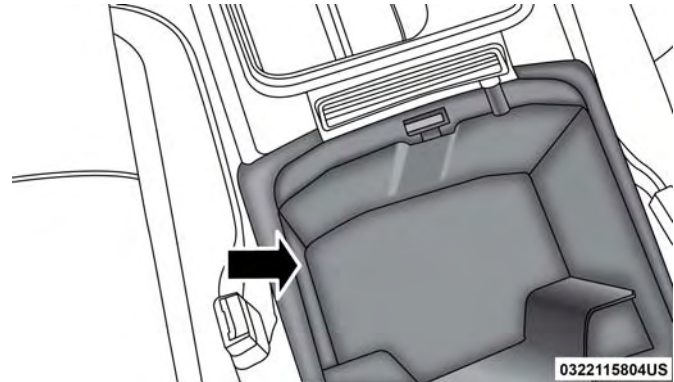
- This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or a collision. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.
- In a collision, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).

Pull on the upper handle on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. The upper storage area contains a USB power outlet that can be used to power small electrical devices, refer to “Electrical Power Outlets” for further information.



**Upper Storage Compartment**

With the upper lid closed, pull on the lower handle to open the lower storage bin.

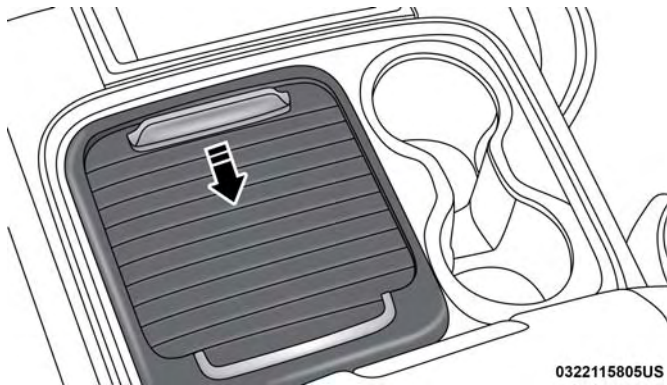


**Lower Storage Bin**

**WARNING!**

Do not operate this vehicle with a console compartment lid in the open position. Driving with the console compartment lid open may result in injury in a collision.

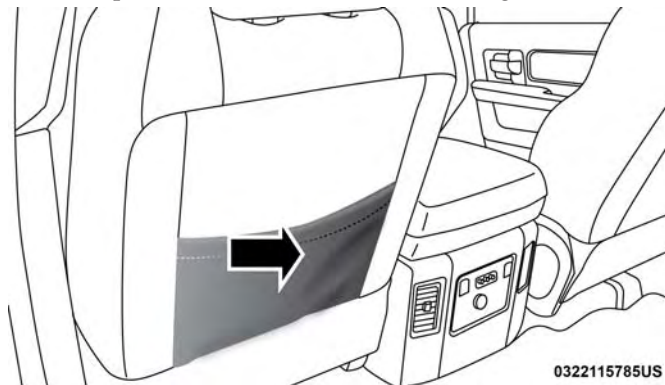
The center console is equipped with a front storage bin located next to the cupholders. This storage bin may be equipped with a manual sliding top door.



Front Storage Bin With Door — If Equipped

## Seatback Storage

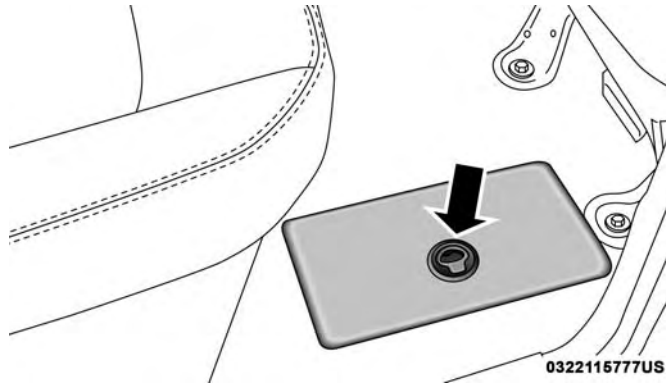
Located in the back of both the driver and passenger front seats are pockets that can be used for storage.



Driver's Side Seatback Storage

### Second Row In-Floor Storage Bin — If Equipped

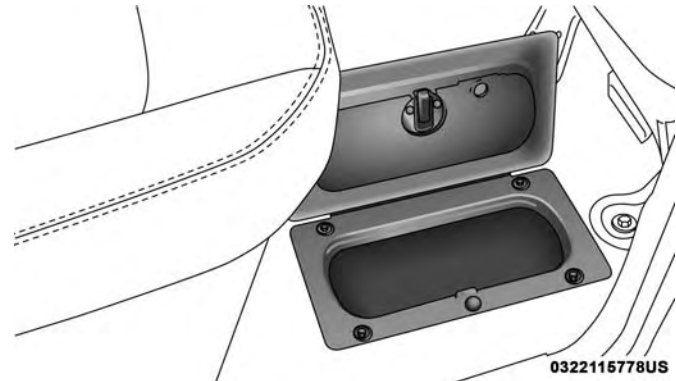
In-floor storage bins are located in front of the second row seats and can be used for extra storage. The storage bins have removable liners that can be easily removed for cleaning.



In-Floor Storage Bin And Latch

To open in-floor storage bin, lift upward on the handle of the latch and open the lid.

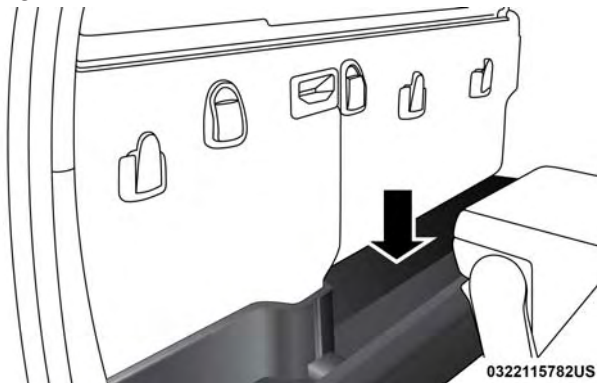
**NOTE:** The front seat may have to be moved forward to fully open the lid.



Opened Storage Bin

### Storage Bin (Regular Cab)

The storage bin is located behind the front seats and runs the length of the cab.



Storage Bin

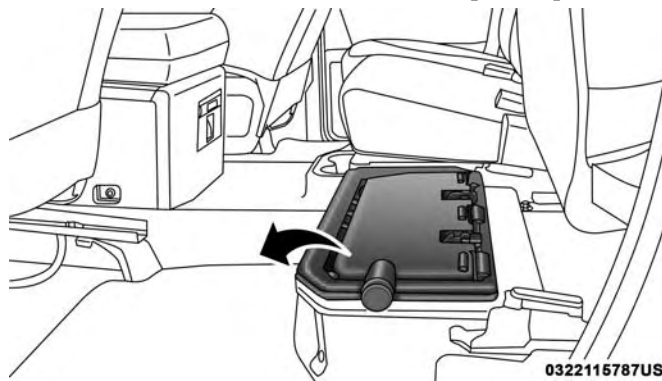
### Fold Flat Load Floor — If Equipped

Quad Cab and Crew Cab models with a 60/40 rear seat may be equipped with a folding load floor.

| WARNING!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Do not operate the vehicle with loose items stored on the load floor. While driving or in an accident you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. Loose objects stored on the load floor may move around with force and strike occupants, resulting in serious or fatal injury. |

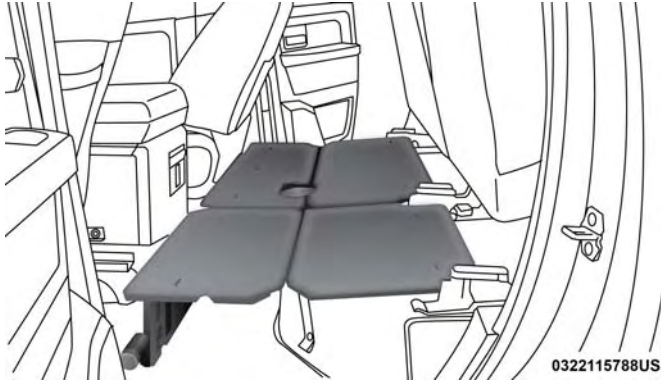
### Unfolding The Load Floor/Quad Cab

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



Unfolding The Load Floor

2. Grasp the knob on the load floor and lift the knob until the load floor unfolds into position.

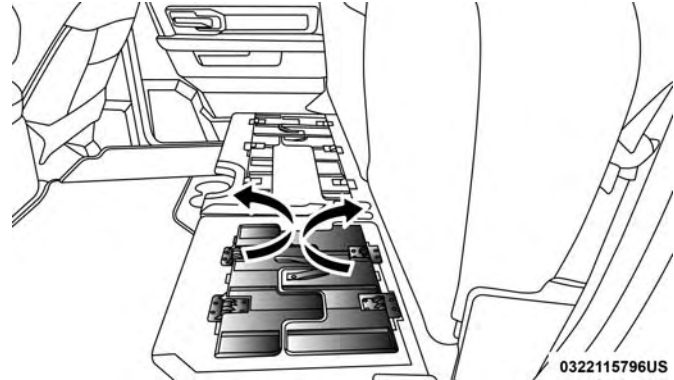


**Load Floor In Open Position**

3. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

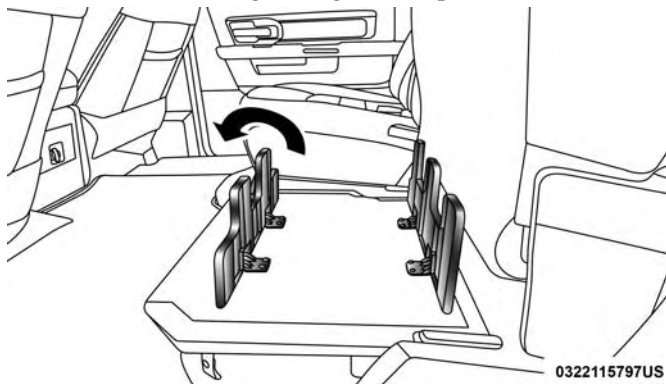
## **Unfolding The Load Floor/Crew Cab**

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



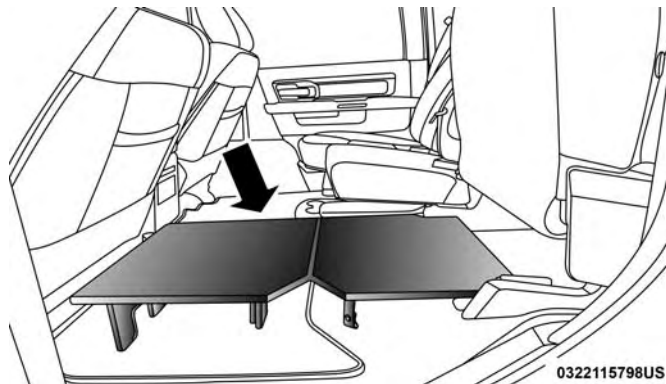
**Load Floor Legs In Stowed Position**

2. Unfold both the legs using the straps.



**Load Floor Legs In Opened Position**

3. Lift the front panel until the load floor unfolds into position.



**Load Floor In Open Position**

4. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.



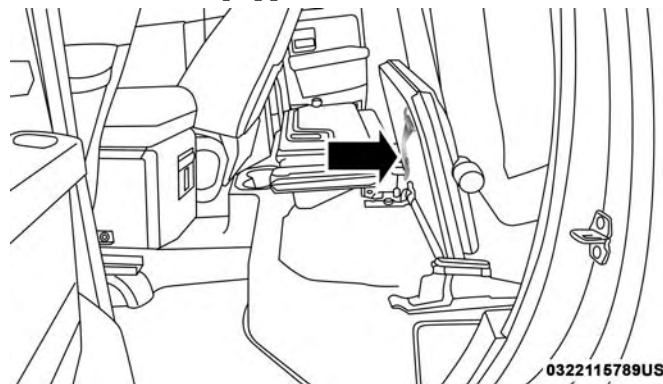
### Positioning The Load Floor For Storage Access Under The Seat

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.
2. Unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor.
3. Lift the load floor up to access storage under the load floor.

#### **WARNING!**

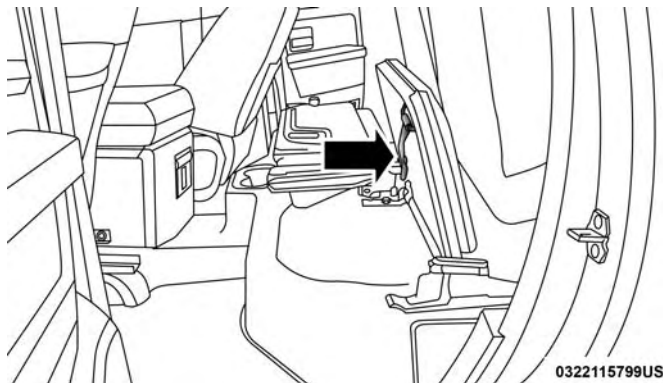
Do not drive with the load floor in the up position. When stopping fast or in an accident, the load floor could move to the down position causing serious injury.

### Quad Cab — If Equipped



Load Floor Securing Straps/Quad Cab

### Crew Cab — If Equipped



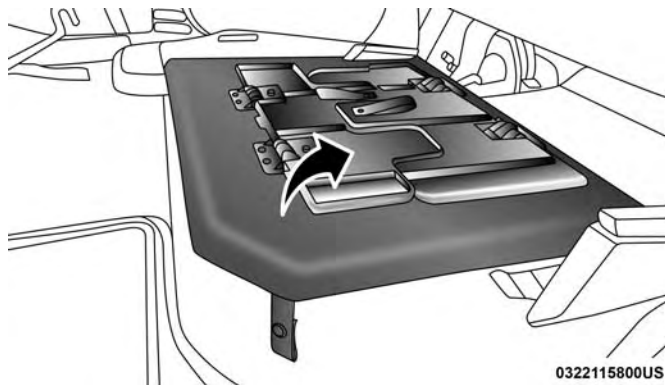
Load Floor Securing Straps/Crew Cab

- Reverse the procedure to put the load floor back in the secured down position before you operate the vehicle.

### Below Rear Seat Storage (Crew Cab/Quad Cab)

The Crew Cab and Quad Cab models provide additional storage under the rear seats. Lift the seats to access the storage compartment.

To open the storage compartments, unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor and lift upward on the fold flat lid.



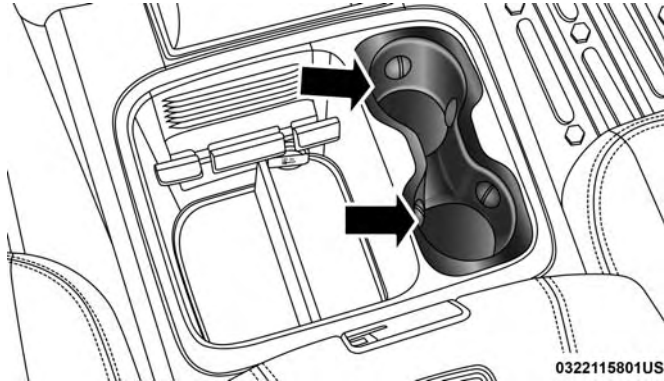
Crew Cab Storage

**NOTE:** For more information on storage and the fold flat floor, refer to “Fold Flat Load Floor” in this section.

## Cupholders

### Front Seat Cupholders

For vehicles equipped with bucket seats, two cupholders are located next to the center console storage bin.



Front Cupholders For Bucket Seats

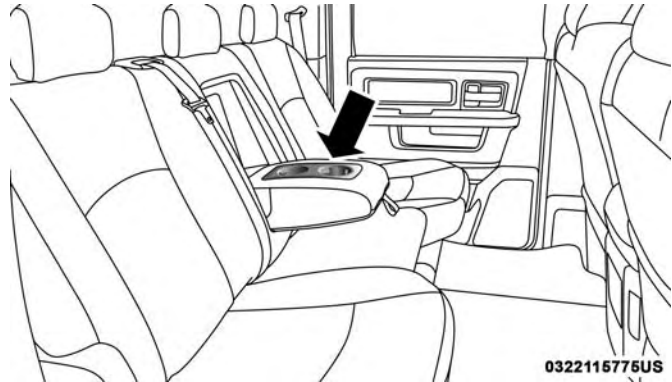
### Vehicles Equipped With 40/20/40 Seats

The cupholders are located on the backside of the center portion of the front seat (20). Fold down the center section of the front seat to gain access to the cupholders.

**3**

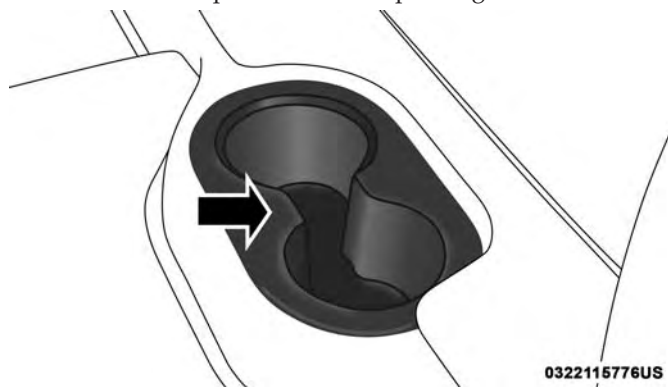
### Rear Cupholders — If Equipped

Some vehicles are equipped with rear cupholders located in the center armrest.



Rear Armrest Cupholder

Some vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cup wells for rear passenger convenience.



Rear Cup Wells

### Electrical Power Outlets

The auxiliary 12 Volt (13 Amp) power outlets can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard “cigar lighter” plug. The 12 Volt power outlets and USB Port (Charge Only) have a cap attached to the outlet indicating “12V DC,” together with either a key symbol, battery symbol, or USB symbol.

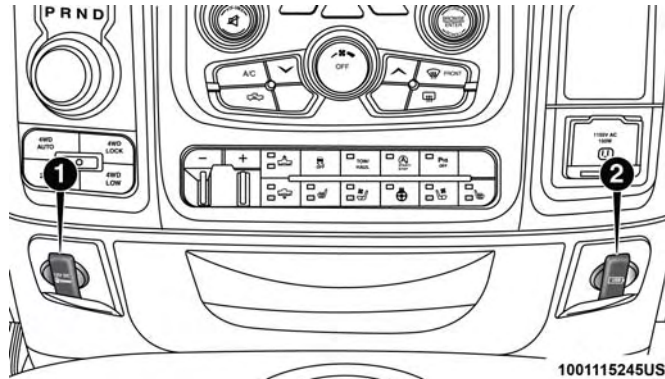
A key symbol indicates that the key must be in the ON/RUN or ACC positions for the outlet to provide power. The battery symbol indicates that the outlet is connected to the battery, and can provide power at all times.

### CAUTION!

- Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watts (13 Amps) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.
- Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlets as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The auxiliary power outlets can be found in the following locations:

- Lower left and lower right of the center stack when equipped with a bench seat.

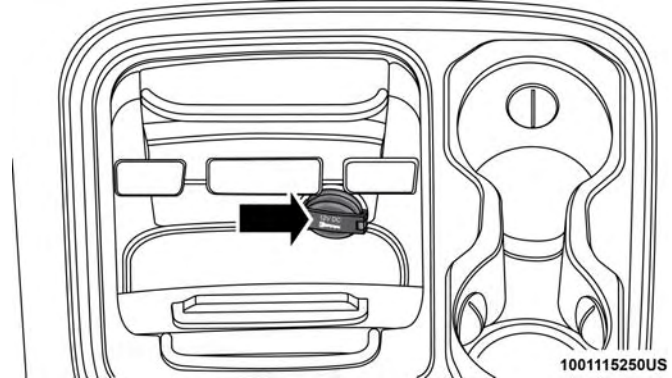


**Power Outlets — Center Stack**

1 — Power Outlet

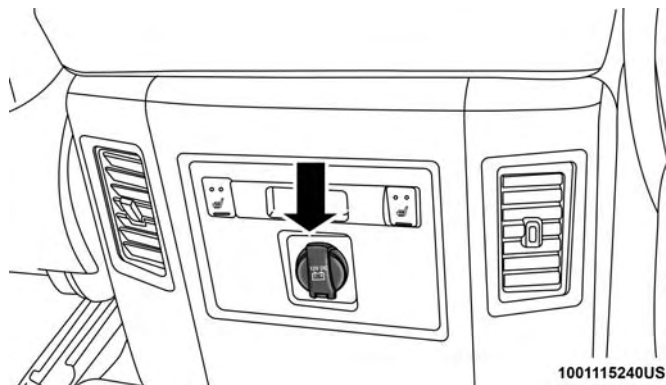
2 — USB Port (Charge Only)

- Center console when equipped with bucket seats.

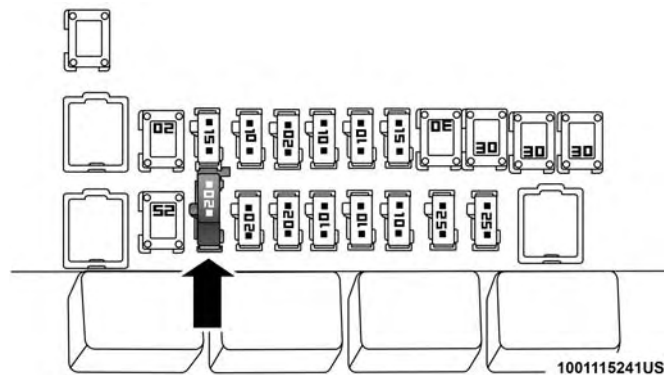


**Power Outlet — Center Console**

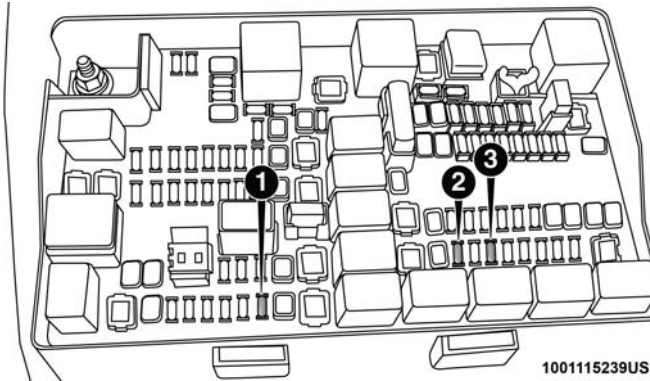
- Rear of the center console storage compartment — Quad Cab or Crew Cab.



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console Fuse



### Power Outlet Fuse Locations

- 1 — F104 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Center Console Bin / USB Port (Charge Only)  
 2 — F90-F91 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Rear Center Console  
 3 — F93 Fuse 20 A Yellow Cigar Lighter Instrument Panel

When the vehicle is turned off, be sure to unplug any equipment as to not drain the battery of the vehicle. All accessories connected to the outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

### WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

3

### CAUTION!

- Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.
- Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.

(Continued)

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.

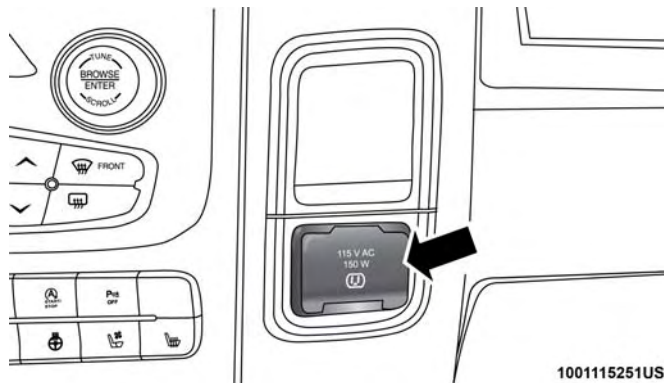
**Cigar Lighter And Ash Receiver — If Equipped**

A removable cigar lighter and ash receiver are available. For vehicles with a bench seat, the cup holder tray can be used to hold the ash receiver.

**Power Inverter — If Equipped**

A 115 or 230 Volt (150 Watts Maximum) outlet is located on the center stack of the instrument panel, to the right of the radio. This outlet can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 150 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles will exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.

The power inverter is designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 150 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter will automatically shut down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet the inverter should automatically reset.

**Power Inverter Outlet**

To turn on the power outlet, simply plug in the device. The outlet automatically turns off when the device is unplugged.

**NOTE:**

- The Power Inverter will only turn on if the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN position.
- Due to built-in overload protection, the power inverter will shut down if the power rating is exceeded.



**WARNING!**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not insert any objects into the receptacles.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

**Auxiliary Switches — If Equipped**

There can be up to five auxiliary switches located in the lower switch bank of the instrument panel which can be used to power various electronic devices and PTO (Power Take Off) – If Equipped. If Power Take Off is equipped, it will take the place of the fifth Auxiliary switch. Connections to the switches are found under the hood in the connectors attached to the auxiliary Power Distribution Center.

You have the ability to configure the functionality of the auxiliary switches via the instrument cluster display. All switches can now be configured for setting the switch type operation to latching or momentary, power source of either battery or ignition, and ability to hold last state across key cycles.

**NOTE:** Holding last state conditions are met when switch type is set to latching and power source is set to ignition.

For further information on using the auxiliary switches, please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide by accessing [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com) and choosing the appropriate links.



# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

## CONTENTS

|                                                                                                                 |     |                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ BASE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER . . . . .                                                                             | 130 | ■ WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES . . . . .                         | 152 |
| □ Base Instrument Cluster Descriptions . . . . .                                                                | 130 | □ Red Warning Lights . . . . .                                  | 152 |
| ■ PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER . . . . .                                                                          | 132 | □ Yellow Warning Lights . . . . .                               | 155 |
| □ Premium Instrument Cluster Descriptions . . . . .                                                             | 132 | □ Yellow Indicator Lights . . . . .                             | 159 |
| ■ INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY . . . . .                                                                          | 134 | □ Green Indicator Lights . . . . .                              | 160 |
| □ Instrument Cluster Display Controls . . . . .                                                                 | 135 | □ White Indicator Lights . . . . .                              | 161 |
| □ Display Menu Screens . . . . .                                                                                | 137 | □ Blue Indicator Lights . . . . .                               | 161 |
| □ Oil Life Reset . . . . .                                                                                      | 139 | ■ ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM — OBD II . . .                      | 161 |
| □ Display Messages . . . . .                                                                                    | 140 | □ Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II)<br>Cybersecurity . . . . . | 162 |
| □ Display Menu Items . . . . .                                                                                  | 142 | ■ EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE<br>PROGRAMS . . . . .    | 163 |
| □ Battery Saver On/Battery Saver Mode Message —<br>Electrical Load Reduction Actions —<br>If Equipped . . . . . | 150 |                                                                 |     |



### 3. Speedometer

- Indicates vehicle speed.

### 4. Fuel Gauge

- The pointer shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
-  The fuel pump symbol points to the side of the vehicle where the fuel door is located.

### 5. Temperature Gauge

- The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.
- The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

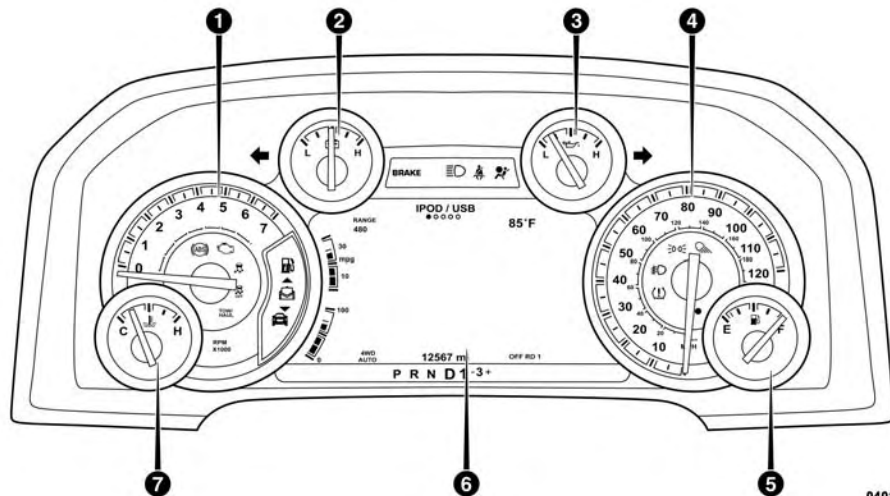
#### **WARNING!**

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealer for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Servicing And Maintenance." Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

#### **CAUTION!**

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads "H," pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H," turn the engine off immediately and call an authorized dealer for service.

## PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



0401117818US

## Premium Instrument Clusters

## Premium Instrument Cluster Descriptions

## 1. Tachometer

- Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM x 1000).

## 2. Voltmeter

- When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either extreme left or right and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

**NOTE:** The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

### 3. Oil Pressure Gauge

- The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading under normal driving conditions may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained from an authorized dealer.

### 4. Speedometer

- Indicates vehicle speed.

### 5. Fuel Gauge

- The pointer shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
-  The fuel pump symbol points to the side of the vehicle where the fuel door is located.

### 6. Instrument Cluster Display

- When the appropriate conditions exist, this display shows the instrument cluster display messages. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### 7. Temperature Gauge

- The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.
- The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

**WARNING!**

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealer for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Servicing And Maintenance." Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

**CAUTION!**

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads "H," pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H," turn the engine off immediately and call an authorized dealer for service.

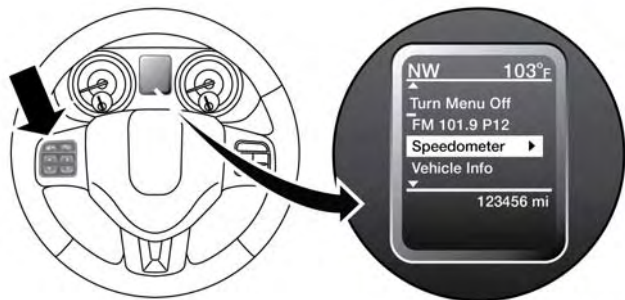
**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY**

Your vehicle will be equipped with an instrument cluster display, which offers useful information to the driver. With the ignition in the STOP/OFF mode, opening/closing of a door will activate the display for viewing, and display the total miles, or kilometers, in the odometer. Your instrument cluster display is designed to display important information about your vehicle's systems and features. Using a driver interactive display located on the instrument panel, your instrument cluster display can show you how systems are working and give you warnings when they are not. The steering wheel mounted controls allow you to scroll through the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.



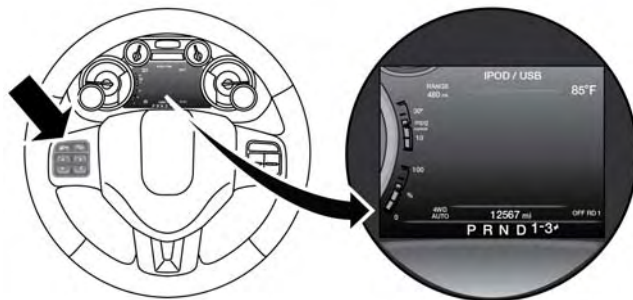
## Instrument Cluster Display Controls

The instrument cluster display features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.



0402117827US

**Base Instrument Cluster Display**



0402117826US

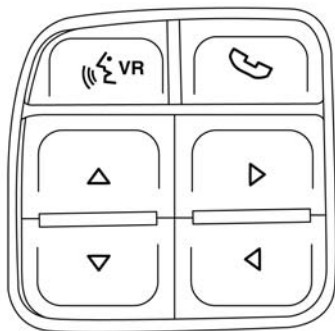
### Premium Instrument Cluster Display

The instrument cluster display menu items may consist of the following:

- Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Audio
- Trailer Tow

- Stored Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not equipped with a Uconnect touch-screen radio)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following instrument cluster display control buttons located on the left side of the steering wheel:



0402117821US

**Instrument Cluster Display Control Buttons**

- *Up Arrow Button*



Push and release the **up** arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.

- *Down Arrow Button*



Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.

- *Right Arrow Button*



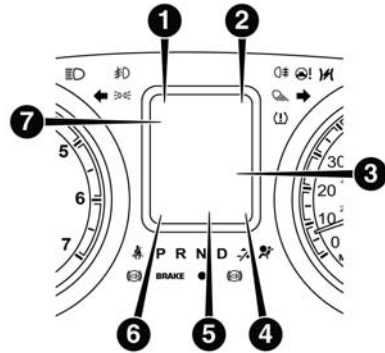
Push and release the **right** arrow button to access/select the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.

- *Left Arrow Button*



Push and release the **left** arrow button to access/select the information screens, submenu screens of a main menu item, or to return to the main menu.

## Display Menu Screens



0402117825US

### Base Instrument Cluster Display

The instrument cluster display screens are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of seven sections:

#### 1. *Compass Display*

Displays the current direction. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

#### 2. *Temperature Display*

Displays the outside temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

#### 3. *Main Screen*

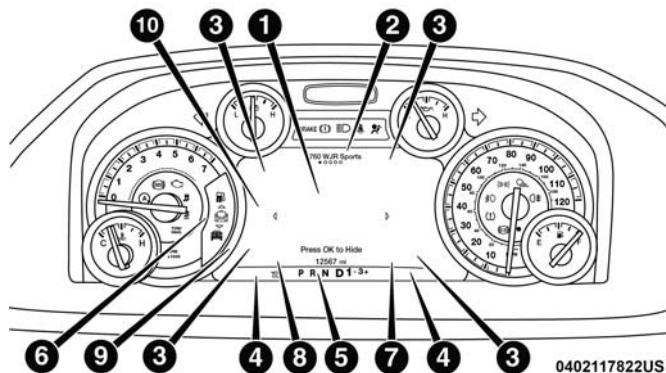
Displays main menu, submenus, settings.

#### 4. *White Telltales*

#### 5. *Amber Telltales*

#### 6. *Red Telltales*

#### 7. *Audio/Phone Information And Submenu Information*



Premium Instrument Cluster Display

The instrument cluster display screens are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of eight sections:

### 1. Main Screen

The inner ring of the display will illuminate in grey under normal conditions, yellow for non critical warnings, red for critical warnings, and white for on demand information.

### 2. Audio / Phone Information and Submenu Information

Whenever there are submenus available, the position within the submenus is shown here.

3. Selectable Information (Compass, Outside Temp, Range to Empty, Trip A, Trip B, Average Fuel Economy, Trailer Trip (distance only), Trailer Brake Gain, Time)

4. Telltales/Indicators

5. Gear Selector Status

6. Selectable Menu Icons

7. 4WD Status

8. Selectable Gauge 2 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current Fuel Economy)

9. Selectable Gauge 1 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current fuel economy)

The instrument cluster display area will normally display the main menu or the screens of a selected feature of the main menu. The main display area also displays “pop up” messages that consist of approximately 60 possible warning or information messages. These pop up messages fall into several categories:

- Five Second Stored Messages

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. Most of the messages of this type are then stored (as long as the

condition that activated it remains active) and can be reviewed from the “Messages” main menu item. As long as there is a stored message, an “i” will be displayed in the instrument cluster display’s compass/outside temp line. Examples of this message type are “Right Front Turn Signal Lamp Out” and “Low Tire Pressure.”

- *Unstored Messages*

This message type is displayed indefinitely or until the condition that activated the message is cleared. Examples of this message type are “Turn Signal On” (if a turn signal is left on) and “Lights On” (if driver leaves the vehicle).

- *Unstored Messages Until RUN*

These messages deal primarily with the Remote Start feature. This message type is displayed until the ignition is in the RUN state. Examples of this message type are “Remote Start Aborted - Door Ajar” and “Press Brake Pedal and Push Button to Start.”

- *Five Second Unstored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. An example of this message type is “Automatic High Beams On.”

## Oil Life Reset

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Oil Change Required” message will display in the instrument cluster display after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

**NOTE:** Use the steering wheel instrument cluster display controls for the following procedure(s).

### Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and place the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the **right** arrow button to access the “Vehicle Info” screen, then scroll up or down to select “Oil Life.”
4. Push and hold the **right** arrow button to select “Reset”.

5. Push and release the **down** arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the **right** arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life to 100%.
6. Push and release the **up** arrow button to exit the instrument cluster display screen.

### Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the **right** arrow button to access the “Vehicle Info” screen then scroll up or down to select “Oil Life.”
4. Push and hold the **right** arrow button to select “YES” by pushing the **right** arrow then push and release the **right** arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life to 100%.
5. Push and release the **up** arrow button to exit the instrument cluster display screen.

**NOTE:** If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the Oil Life indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

### Display Messages

- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Service Airbag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Antilock Brake System
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire To XX”

- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn With Remote Lock: Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
- Vehicle Not In Park
- Key In Ignition
- Key In Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key To Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button
- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start To Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available
- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift to Neutral Then Drive Or Reverse
- Autostick Unavailable Service Required

- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Push Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift To Park Wait To Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready To Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake To Prevent Rolling
- Transmission Too Cold Idle With Engine On
- Washer Fluid Low

The Reconfigurable Telltales section is divided into the white telltales area on the right, yellow telltales in the middle, and red telltales on the left.

### Display Menu Items

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the desired selectable menu icon is highlighted in the instrument cluster display.

### Speedometer

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the speedometer menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button to cycle the display between mph and km/h.

### Vehicle Info

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Vehicle Info menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button to enter the submenus items of Vehicle Info. Follow the directional prompts to access or reset any of the following Vehicle Info submenu items:

- Tire Pressure
- Transmission Temp (Automatic only)
- Oil Temp
- Oil Life
- Fuel Filter Life
- Battery Voltage — If Equipped
- Gauge Summary — If Equipped
- Engine Hours



## Fuel Economy

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Fuel Economy menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and Hold the **right** arrow button to reset Average Fuel Economy.

- Current Fuel Economy Gauge
- Average Fuel Economy Value
- Range To Empty
- Dual Fuel Tank levels — If Equipped
- Push and release the **right** arrow button to display the Fuel Tank Level submenu item. Your instrument cluster display will display the fuel levels of the Front and Rear fuel tanks. The fuel is automatically transferred from the Rear tank to the Front tank based on both tank levels. Fuel transfer is complete once the Front Fuel Level is greater than the Rear Fuel Level.

## Trip A/Trip B

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Trip menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button to enter the submenus of Trip A and Trip B. The Trip A or Trip B information will display the following:

- Distance

- Average Fuel Economy
- Elapsed Time

Push and hold **right** arrow button to reset all information.

## Trailer Tow

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Trailer Tow menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button and the next screen will display the following trailer trip information:

- Trip (trailer specific) Distance: Push and hold the **right** arrow button to reset the distance.
- Trailer Brake
  - Output
  - Type
  - Gain

## Audio

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Audio display icon is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button to display the active source.

## Stored Messages

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Messages Menu item is highlighted. This feature shows the number of stored warning messages. Pushing the **right** arrow button will allow you to see what the stored messages are.

When no messages are present, main menu icon will be a closed envelope.

## Screen Setup Menu Item

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the Screen Setup menu item is highlighted in the instrument cluster display. Push and release the **right** arrow button to enter the Screen Setup submenu. The Screen Setup feature allows you to change what information is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the location that information is displayed.

## Screen Setup Driver Selectable Items

### Upper Left

- None
- Compass (Default Setting)
- Outside Temp

- Time
- Range To Empty
- Average MPG
- Current MPG
- Trip A Distance
- Trip B Distance
- Trailer Trip
- Trailer Brake Gain

### Upper Right

- None
- Compass
- Outside Temp (Default Setting)
- Time
- Range To Empty
- Average MPG
- Current MPG
- Trip A Distance
- Trip B Distance

- Trailer Trip
- Trailer Brake Gain

#### **Lower Left**

- None
- Compass
- Outside Temp
- Time
- Range To Empty
- Average MPG
- Current MPG
- Trailer Brake Gain

#### **Lower Right**

- None
- Compass
- Outside Temp
- Time
- Range To Empty
- Average MPG

- Current MPG
- Trailer Brake Gain

#### **Lower Gauge**

- None
- Trans Temp
- Oil Temp
- Oil Life
- Fuel Filter Life (Diesel)
- Battery Voltage (Diesel)
- Current MPG
- Trailer Brake

#### **Odometer**

- No Decimals (Default Setting)
- Decimals

#### **Restore Defaults**

- Cancel (Default Setting)
- Ok

## Settings — If Equipped

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK.

Push and release the **up** and **down** button until Settings displays in the instrument cluster display.

Follow the prompts to display and set any of the following Vehicle Settings.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle may be equipped with the following settings.

- If equipped with a base radio (Non-Touchscreen) Vehicle Settings will be included in the instrument cluster display.
- If equipped with a Touchscreen radio, the Vehicle Settings will be included in the radio head unit.

|   | Setting Names          | Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer) | Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Language Select        | Language                                       | English, Spanish, French, Italian, German, Dutch                                                                                                                                          |
| 2 | Units                  | Units                                          | U.S.; Metric                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 3 | ParkSense              | ParkSense                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification — Sound Only; Sound &amp; Display</li> <li>• Front Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> <li>• Rear Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> </ul> |
| 4 | Tilt Mirror in Reverse | Tilt Mirror in R                               | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 5 | Rain Sensing Wipers    | Auto Wipers                                    | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 6 | Hill Start Assist      | Hill Start Assist                              | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                   |

|    | Setting Names                | Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer) | Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)               |
|----|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 7  | Headlights Off Delay         | Lights Off Delay                               | 0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds |
| 8  | Illuminated Approach         | Lights w/ Unlock                               | 0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds |
| 9  | Headlights On with Wipers    | Lights w/ Wipers                               | On; Off                                       |
| 10 | Automatic Highbeams          | Auto Highbeams                                 | On; Off                                       |
| 11 | Daytime Running Lights       | Daytime Lights                                 | On; Off                                       |
| 12 | Flash Lights with Lock       | Lights w/ Lock                                 | On; Off                                       |
| 13 | Auto Lock Doors              | Auto Lock Doors                                | On; Off                                       |
| 14 | Auto Unlock Doors            | Auto Unlock Doors                              | On; Off                                       |
| 15 | Sound Horn with Remote Start | Horn w/ Rmt Start                              | On; Off                                       |
| 16 | Sound Horn with Remote Lock  | Horn w/ Rmt Lock                               | On; Off                                       |
| 17 | Remote Unlock Sequence       | Remote Unlock                                  | Driver Door; All Doors                        |
| 18 | Key Fob Linked to Memory     | Key in Memory                                  | On; Off                                       |
| 19 | Passive Entry                | Passive Entry                                  | On; Off                                       |
| 20 | Remote Start Comfort System  | Rmt Start Comfort                              | On; Off                                       |
| 21 | Easy Exit Seat               | Easy Exit Seat                                 | On; Off                                       |
| 22 | Key-off Power Delay          | Power Off Delay                                | Off; 45 seconds; 5 minutes; 10 minutes        |

|    | Setting Names          | Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer) | Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----|------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 23 | Commercial Settings    | Commercial                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aux Switches</li> <li>• Power Take-Off</li> <li>• PIN Setup</li> <li>• ParkSense Setup</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the vehicle's PIN is forgotten or not known, see an authorized dealer to have the PIN reset.</p> |
| 24 | Aero Ride Height Mode  | Aero Mode                                      | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 25 | Tire/Jack Mode         | Tire/Jack Mode                                 | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 26 | Transport Mode         | Transport Mode                                 | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 27 | Wheel Alignment Mode   | Wheel Alignment                                | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 28 | Horn w/ Remote Lower   | Horn w/ Rmt Lwr                                | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 29 | Lights w/ Remote Lower | Lights w/ Rmt Lwr                              | On; Off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 30 | Trailer Select         | Trailer Select                                 | Trailer 1; Trailer 2; Trailer 3; Trailer 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 31 | Brake Type             | Brake Type                                     | Light Electric; Heavy Electric; Light EOH; Heavy EOH                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

|    | Setting Names     | Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer) | Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 32 | Trailer Name      | Trailer Name                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trailer # (# is equal to slot position)</li> <li>• Boat</li> <li>• Car</li> <li>• Cargo</li> <li>• Dump</li> <li>• Equipment</li> <li>• Flatbed</li> <li>• Gooseneck</li> <li>• Horse</li> <li>• Tag</li> <li>• Motorcycle</li> <li>• Snowmobile</li> <li>• Travel</li> <li>• Utility</li> <li>• 5th Wheel</li> </ul> |
| 33 | Compass Variance  | Compass Var                                    | 1-15 increments of 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 34 | Calibrate Compass | Compass Cal                                    | Cancel; Calibrate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

### Turn Menu Off — If Equipped

Push and release the **right** arrow button to exit the main menu.

Push and release any instrument cluster display control button to enter the instrument cluster display main menu again.

### **Battery Saver On/Battery Saver Mode Message — Electrical Load Reduction Actions — If Equipped**

This vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Battery Sensor (IBS) to perform additional monitoring of the electrical system and status of the vehicle battery.

In cases when the IBS detects charging system failure, or the vehicle battery conditions are deteriorating, electrical load reduction actions will take place to extend the driving time and distance of the vehicle. This is done by reducing power to or turning off non-essential electrical loads.

Load reduction is only active when the engine is running. It will display a message if there is a risk of battery depletion to the point where the vehicle may stall due to lack of electrical supply, or will not restart after the current drive cycle.

When load reduction is activated, the message “Battery Saver On” or “Battery Saver Mode” will appear in the instrument cluster.

These messages indicate the vehicle battery has a low state of charge and continues to lose electrical charge at a rate that the charging system cannot sustain.

#### **NOTE:**

- The charging system is independent from load reduction. The charging system performs a diagnostic on the charging system continuously.
- If the Battery Charge Warning Light is on it may indicate a problem with the charging system. Refer to “Battery Charge Warning Light” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The electrical loads that may be switched off (if equipped), and vehicle functions which can be affected by load reduction:

- Heated Seat/Vented Seats/Heated Wheel
- Rear Defroster And Heated Mirrors
- HVAC System
- 115V AC Power Inverter System
- Audio and Telematics System

Loss of the battery charge may indicate one or more of the following conditions:

- The charging system cannot deliver enough electrical power to the vehicle system because the electrical loads are larger than the capability of charging system. The charging system is still functioning properly.



- Turning on all possible vehicle electrical loads (e.g. HVAC to max settings, exterior and interior lights, overloaded power outlets +12V, 115V AC, USB ports) during certain driving conditions (city driving, towing, frequent stopping).
- Installing options like additional lights, upfitter electrical accessories, audio systems, alarms and similar devices.
- Unusual driving cycles (short trips separated by long parking periods).
- The vehicle was parked for an extended period of time (weeks, months).
- The battery was recently replaced and was not charged completely.
- The battery was discharged by an electrical load left on when the vehicle was parked.
- The battery was used for an extended period with the engine not running to supply radio, lights, chargers, +12V portable appliances like vacuum cleaners, game consoles and similar devices.

### **What to do when an electrical load reduction action message is present (“Battery Saver On” or “Battery Saver Mode”)**

During a trip:

- Reduce power to unnecessary loads if possible:
  - Turn off redundant lights (interior or exterior)
  - Check what may be plugged in to power outlets +12V, 115V AC, USB ports
  - Check HVAC settings (blower, temperature)
  - Check the audio settings (volume)

After a trip:

- Check if any aftermarket equipment was installed (additional lights, upfitter electrical accessories, audio systems, alarms) and review specifications if any (load and Ignition Off Draw currents).
- Evaluate the latest driving cycles (distance, driving time and parking time).
- The vehicle should have service performed if the message is still present during consecutive trips and the evaluation of the vehicle and driving pattern did not help to identify the cause.

## WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

The warning/indicator lights will illuminate in the instrument panel together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner's Manual, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this chapter in the event of a failure indication. All active telltales will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Some telltales are optional and may not appear.

### Red Warning Lights

#### — Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

This light indicates when the driver or passenger seat belt is unbuckled. When the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound and the light will turn on. When driving, if the driver or front passenger seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound.

Refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information.

#### — Air Bag Warning Light

This light indicates a fault with the air bag, and will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the air bag has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### — Brake Warning Light

This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

**NOTE:** The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

### **WARNING!**

**Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.**

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON/RUN position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:** This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

### **● — Vehicle Security Warning Light — If Equipped**

This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

### — Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This light warns of an overheated engine condition. If the engine coolant temperature is too high, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound. If the temperature reaches the upper limit, a continuous chime will sound for four minutes or until the engine is able to cool: whichever comes first.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### — Battery Charge Warning Light

This light illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

This indicates a possible problem with the electrical system or a related component.

### — Oil Pressure Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to indicate low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

### — Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to inform of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the vehicle is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the transmission is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on with the vehicle running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

**NOTE:** This light may turn on if the accelerator and brake pedals are pressed at the same time.

If the light continues to flash when the vehicle is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle, or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

#### — Electric Power Steering Fault Warning Light

This light will turn on when there's a fault with the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system. Refer to "Power Steering" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

### WARNING!

Continued operation with reduced assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

#### — Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

#### — Oil Temperature Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to indicate the engine oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. Wait for oil temperature to return to normal levels.

#### — Door Open Warning Light

This indicator will illuminate when a door is ajar/open and not fully closed.

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is moving there will also be a single chime.

### Yellow Warning Lights

#### — Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Warning Light (MIL)

The Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. This warning light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when turning the ignition switch from OFF to ON/RUN, have the condition checked promptly.

Certain conditions, such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc., may illuminate the light after engine start.

The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing.

When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced as soon as possible if this occurs.

### **WARNING!**

**A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.**

### **CAUTION!**

**Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the vehicle control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

## — Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light — If Equipped

This light will indicate when the Electronic Stability Control system is Active. The “ESC Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, and when ESC is activated. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive.
- This light will come on when the vehicle is in an ESC event.



### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Warning Light — If Equipped**

This light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

Each time the ignition is turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN, the ESC system will be on, even if it was turned off previously.



### **Low Washer Fluid Warning Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

### **(!) — Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light**

The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.

Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire in sequence.

### **CAUTION!**

**Do not continue driving with one or more flat tires as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. If a tire puncture occurs, repair immediately using the dedicated tire repair kit and contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and

can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to

ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### CAUTION!

**The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.**



### — Low Fuel Indicator Light

When the fuel level reaches approximately 3.0 gal (11.0 L) this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.



### — Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Warning Light

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, then the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and service is required as soon as possible. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally, assuming the Brake Warning Light is not also on.

If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, have the brake system inspected by an authorized dealer.

### — Low Coolant Level Warning Light

This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.

### — Loose Fuel Filler Cap Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate when the fuel filler cap is loose. Properly close the filler cap to disengage the light. If the light does not turn off, please see an authorized dealer.



### — Service 4WD Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate to signal a fault with the 4WD system. If the light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required. We recommend you drive to the nearest service center and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

### Yellow Indicator Lights

#### — Transmission Temperature Warning Light

This light indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is running hot. This may occur with severe usage, such as trailer towing. If this light turns on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Then, shift the transmission into PARK and run the engine at idle or slightly higher until the light turns off.

### WARNING!

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

**CAUTION!**

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

 — **TOW/HAUL Indicator Light**

This indicator light will illuminate when TOW/HAUL mode is selected.

 — **Cargo Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pushing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

 — **4WD Low Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels.

Refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.

 — **4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive mode, and the front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

 — **2WD Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the two-wheel drive mode.

**Green Indicator Lights**

 — **Park/Headlight On Indicator Light**

This indicator light will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

 — **Front Fog Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

 — **Turn Signal Indicator Lights**

When the left or right turn signal is activated, the turn signal indicator will flash independently and the corresponding exterior turn signal lamps will flash. Turn signals can be activated when the multifunction lever is moved down (left) or up (right).

**NOTE:**

- A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on.
- Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator flashes at a rapid rate.

### — **Cruise Control Set Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the speed control is set to the desired speed. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### **White Indicator Lights**

#### — **Cruise Control Ready Indicator**

This light will turn on when the speed control is ready, but not set.

#### — **Speed Control SET Indicator Light**

This light will turn on when the speed control is set. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### **Blue Indicator Lights**

#### — **High Beam Indicator Light**

This indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the high beam headlights are on. With the low beams activated, push the multifunction lever forward (toward the front of the vehicle) to turn on the high beams. Pull the multifunction lever rearward (toward the rear of the vehicle) to turn off the high beams. If the high beams are off, pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, “flash to pass” scenario.

### **ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM — OBD II**

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated Onboard Diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your

vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

### CAUTION!

- Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.
- If the MIL is flashing while the vehicle is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

### Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity

Your vehicle is required to have an Onboard Diagnostic system (OBD II) and a connection port to allow access to information related to the performance of your emissions controls. Authorized service technicians may need to access this information to assist with the diagnosis and service of your vehicle and emissions system.

### WARNING!

- **ONLY** an authorized service technician should connect equipment to the OBD II connection port in order to read the VIN, diagnose, or service your vehicle.
- If unauthorized equipment is connected to the OBD II connection port, such as a driver-behavior tracking device, it may:
  - Be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
  - Access, or allow others to access, information stored in your vehicle systems, including personal information.

For further information, refer to “Cybersecurity” in “Multimedia”.

## EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.



For states that require an Inspection and Maintenance (I/M), this check verifies the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the

OBD II system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD II system will be ready. The OBD II system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently serviced, recently had a dead battery or a battery replacement. If the OBD II system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Your vehicle has a simple ignition actuated test, which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD II system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.

**NOTE:** If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.

2. As soon as you cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, you will see the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.
3. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:
  - The MIL will flash for about ten seconds and then return to being fully illuminated until you turn OFF the ignition or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.
  - The MIL will not flash at all and will remain fully illuminated until you place the ignition in the off position or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD II system is **not ready**, you should see an authorized dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was recently serviced or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD II system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is **now ready**.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD II system is ready or not, if the MIL is illuminated during normal vehicle operation you should have your vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL is on with the engine running.

# SAFETY

## CONTENTS

|                                                    |     |                                                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ SAFETY FEATURES . . . . .                        | 166 | □ Child Restraints . . . . .                                           | 211 |
| □ Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .           | 166 | □ Transporting Pets . . . . .                                          | 236 |
| □ Electronic Brake Control System . . . . .        | 167 | ■ SAFETY TIPS . . . . .                                                | 236 |
| ■ AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS . . . . .              | 178 | □ Transporting Passengers . . . . .                                    | 236 |
| □ Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . . | 178 | □ Exhaust Gas . . . . .                                                | 237 |
| ■ OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS . . . . .             | 185 | □ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle . . . . .           | 237 |
| □ Occupant Restraint Systems Features . . . . .    | 185 | □ Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle . . . . . | 239 |
| □ Important Safety Precautions . . . . .           | 185 |                                                                        |     |
| □ Seat Belt Systems . . . . .                      | 186 |                                                                        |     |
| □ Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) . . . . .   | 199 |                                                                        |     |

## SAFETY FEATURES

### Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) provides increased vehicle stability and brake performance under most braking conditions. The system automatically prevents wheel lock, and enhances vehicle control during braking.

The ABS performs a self-check cycle to ensure that the ABS is working properly each time the vehicle is started and driven. During this self-check, you may hear a slight clicking sound as well as some related motor noises.

ABS is activated during braking when the system detects one or more wheels begin to lock. Road conditions such as ice, snow, gravel, bumps, railroad tracks, loose debris, or panic stops may increase the likelihood of ABS activation(s).

You also may experience the following when ABS activates:

- The ABS motor noise (it may continue to run for a short time after the stop).
- The clicking sound of solenoid valves.
- Brake pedal pulsations.
- A slight drop of the brake pedal at the end of the stop.

These are all normal characteristics of ABS.

### WARNING!

- The ABS contains sophisticated electronic equipment that may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.
- Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to a collision. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.
- The ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.
- The ABS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner that could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

ABS is designed to function with the OEM tires. Modification may result in degraded ABS performance.

**Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light**

The yellow "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" will turn on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" is on.

If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of anti-lock brakes. If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" does not come on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

**Electronic Brake Control System**

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced Electronic Brake Control system (EBC). This system includes Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD), Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Hill Start Assist (HSA), Traction Control System (TCS), Electronic Stability Control (ESC), and Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM). These systems work together to enhance both vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions.

Your vehicle may also be equipped with Trailer Sway Control (TSC) and Hill Descent Control (HDC).

**Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)**

This function manages the distribution of the braking torque between the front and rear axles by limiting braking pressure to the rear axle. This is done to prevent overslip of the rear wheels to avoid vehicle instability, and to prevent the rear axle from entering ABS before the front axle.

**Brake System Warning Light**

The red "Brake System Warning Light" will turn on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the “Brake System Warning Light” remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the brake system is not functioning properly and that immediate service is required. If the “Brake System Warning Light” does not come on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

### Brake Assist System (BAS)

The BAS is designed to optimize the vehicle’s braking capability during emergency braking maneuvers. The system detects an emergency braking situation by sensing the rate and amount of brake application and then applies optimum pressure to the brakes. This can help reduce braking distances. The BAS complements the anti-lock brake system (ABS). Applying the brakes very quickly results in the best BAS assistance. To receive the benefit of the system, you must apply continuous braking pressure during the stopping sequence, (do not “pump” the brakes). Do not reduce brake pedal pressure unless braking is no longer desired. Once the brake pedal is released, the BAS is deactivated.

### WARNING!

The Brake Assist System (BAS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. BAS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of a BAS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner, which could jeopardize the user’s safety or the safety of others.

### Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system is designed to mitigate roll back from a complete stop while on an incline. If the driver releases the brake while stopped on an incline, HSA will continue to hold the brake pressure for a short period. If the driver does not apply the throttle before this time expires, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the hill as normal.

The following conditions must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- The feature must be enabled.

- The vehicle must be stopped.
- Park brake must be off.
- Driver door must be closed.
- The vehicle must be on a sufficient grade.
- The gear selection must match vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).
- HSA will work in REVERSE gear and all forward gears. The system will not activate if the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL. For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, if the clutch is pressed, HSA will remain active.

### WARNING!

There may be situations where the Hill Start Assist (HSA) will not activate and slight rolling may occur, such as on minor hills or with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer. HSA is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive to distance to other vehicles, people, and objects, and most importantly brake

(Continued)

### WARNING! (Continued)

operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

### Towing With HSA

HSA will also provide assistance to mitigate roll back while towing a trailer.

### WARNING!

- If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, the trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, there may not be enough brake pressure to hold both the vehicle and the trailer on a hill when the brake pedal is released. In order to avoid rolling down an incline while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake or apply more vehicle brake pressure prior to releasing the brake pedal.

(Continued)

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- HSA is not a parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting your vehicle. Also, be certain to place the transmission in PARK.
- Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

**Disabling And Enabling HSA**

This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- If disabling HSA using your instrument cluster display, refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- If disabling HSA using Uconnect Settings, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

For vehicles not equipped with an instrument cluster display, perform the following steps:

1. Center the steering wheel (front wheels pointing straight forward).
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Apply the parking brake.

4. Start the engine.
5. Rotate the steering wheel slightly more than one-half turn to the left.
6. Push the “ESC Off” button located in the lower switch bank below the climate control four times within 20 seconds. The “ESC Off Indicator Light” should turn on and turn off two times.
7. Rotate the steering wheel back to center and then an additional slightly more than one-half turn to the right.
8. Turn the ignition to the OFF mode and then back to ON. If the sequence was completed properly, the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will blink several times to confirm HSA is disabled.
9. Repeat these steps if you want to return this feature to its previous setting.

**Traction Control System (TCS)**

This system monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, the TCS may apply brake pressure to the spinning wheel(s) and/or reduce engine power to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS, Brake Limited Differential (BLD), functions similar to a limited slip differential and

controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. BLD may remain enabled even if TCS and ESC are in a reduced mode.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

This system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. ESC corrects for oversteering or understeering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.

ESC uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESC applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer — when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

- Understeer — when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” located in the instrument cluster will start to flash as soon as the ESC system becomes active. The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” also flashes when the TCS is active. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent accidents resulting from loss of vehicle control due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Only a safe, attentive,**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

- Vehicle modifications, or failure to properly maintain your vehicle, may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle, and may negatively affect the performance of the ESC system. Changes to the steering system, suspension, braking system, tire type and size or wheel size may adversely affect ESC performance. Improperly inflated and unevenly worn tires may also degrade ESC performance. Any vehicle modification or poor vehicle maintenance that reduces the effectiveness of the ESC system can increase the risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**ESC Operating Modes**

**NOTE:** Depending upon model and mode of operation, the ESC system may have multiple operating modes.

**ESC On**

This is the normal operating mode for the ESC. Whenever the vehicle is started, the ESC system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for most driving conditions. Alternate ESC modes should only be used for specific reasons as noted in the following paragraphs.

**Partial Off**

The "Partial Off" mode is intended for times when a more spirited driving experience is desired. This mode may modify TCS and ESC thresholds for activation, which allows for more wheel spin than normally allowed. This mode may be useful if the vehicle becomes stuck.

To enter the "Partial Off" mode, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will illuminate. To turn the ESC on again, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will turn off.

**NOTE:** For vehicles with multiple partial ESC modes a momentary button push will toggle the ESC mode. Multiple momentary button pushed may be required to return to ESC On.

**WARNING!**

- When in “Partial Off” mode, the TCS functionality of ESC, (except for the limited slip feature described in the TCS section), has been disabled and the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will be illuminated. When in “Partial Off” mode, the engine power reduction feature of TCS is disabled, and the enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is reduced.
- Trailer Sway control (TSC) is disabled when the ESC system is in the “Partial Off” mode.

**Full Off — If Equipped**

This mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only and should not be used on any public roadways. In this mode, TCS and ESC features are turned OFF. To enter the “Full Off” mode, push and hold the “ESC Off” switch for five seconds while the vehicle is stopped with the engine running. After five seconds, a chime will sound, the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will illuminate, and the “ESC OFF” message will display in the instrument cluster. To turn ESC ON again, momentarily push the “ESC Off” switch.

**NOTE:** System may switch from ESC “Full Off” to “Partial Off” mode when vehicle exceeds a predetermined speed. When the vehicle speed slows below the predetermined speed the system will return to ESC “Full Off”.

ESC modes may also be affected by drive modes if so equipped.

**WARNING!****5**

- In the ESC “Full Off” mode, the engine torque reduction and stability features are disabled. Therefore, enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. ESC “Full Off” mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only.
- With the ESC switched off, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESC is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. ESC “Full Off” mode is only intended for off-highway or off-road use.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent all accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent collisions.

**ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light And ESC OFF Indicator Light**

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is turned to the ON mode. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster) starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESC system becomes active. The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” also flashes when TCS is active. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

**NOTE:**

- The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” and the “ESC OFF Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESC system will be on even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.



The “ESC OFF Indicator Light” indicates the customer has elected to have the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) in a reduced mode.



## Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM)

This system anticipates the potential for wheel lift by monitoring the driver's steering wheel input and the speed of the vehicle. When ERM determines that the rate of change of the steering wheel angle and vehicle's speed are sufficient to potentially cause wheel lift, it then applies the appropriate brake and may also reduce engine power to lessen the chance that wheel lift will occur. ERM can only reduce the chance of wheel lift occurring during severe or evasive driving maneuvers; it cannot prevent wheel lift due to other factors, such as road conditions, leaving the roadway, or striking objects or other vehicles.

**NOTE:** ERM is disabled anytime the ESC is in "Full Off" mode (if equipped). Refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in this section for a complete explanation of the available ESC modes.

### WARNING!

**Many factors, such as vehicle loading, road conditions and driving conditions, influence the chance that wheel lift or rollover may occur. ERM cannot prevent all wheel lift or roll overs, especially those that involve**

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

**leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles. The capabilities of an ERM-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

## Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

TSC uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized.

**NOTE:** TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the trailer tongue weight recommendations. Refer to "Trailer Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

When TSC is functioning, the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESC system is in the "Partial Off" or "Full Off" modes.

**WARNING!**

If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.

**Hill Descent Control (HDC) — If Equipped**

HDC is intended for low speed off road driving while in 4WD Low Range. HDC maintains vehicle speed while descending hills during various driving situations. HDC controls vehicle speed by actively controlling the brakes.

**HDC Has Three States:**

1. Off (feature is not enabled and will not activate).
2. Enabled (feature is enabled and ready but activation conditions are not met, or driver is actively overriding with brake or throttle application).
3. Active (feature is enabled and actively controlling vehicle speed).

**Enabling HDC**

HDC is enabled by pushing the HDC switch, but the following conditions must also be met to enable HDC:

- Driveline is in 4WD Low Range.

- Vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Parking brake is released.
- Driver door is closed.

**Activating HDC**

Once HDC is enabled it will activate automatically if driven down a grade of sufficient magnitude. The set speed for HDC is selectable by the driver, and can be adjusted by using the gear shift +/- . The following summarizes the HDC set speeds:

**HDC Target Set Speeds**

- P = No set speed. HDC may be enabled but will not activate.
- R = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- N = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- D = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 1st = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 2nd = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- 3rd = 1.8 mph (3 km/h)
- 4th = 2.5 mph (4 km/h)

- 5th = 3.1 mph (5 km/h)
- 6th = 3.7 mph (6 km/h)
- 7th = 4.3 mph (7 km/h)
- 8th = 5.0 mph (8 km/h)
- 9th = 5.6 mph (9 km/h) – If Equipped

**NOTE:** During HDC the +/- shifter input is used for HDC target speed selection, but will not affect the gear chosen by the transmission. When actively controlling HDC the transmission will shift appropriately for the driver-selected set speed and corresponding driving conditions.

### Driver Override

The driver may override HDC activation with throttle or brake application at anytime.

### Deactivating HDC

HDC will be deactivated but remain available if any of the following conditions occur:

- Driver overrides HDC set speed with throttle or brake application.
- Vehicle speed exceeds 20 mph (32 km/h) but remains below 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Vehicle is on a downhill grade of insufficient magnitude, is on level ground, or is on an uphill grade.
- Vehicle is shifted to park.

### Disabling HDC

HDC will be deactivated and disabled if any of the following conditions occur:

- The driver pushes the HDC switch.
- The driveline is shifted out of 4WD Low Range.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Driver door opens.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 20 mph (32 km/h) for greater than 70 seconds.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 40 mph (64 km/h) (HDC exits immediately).
- HDC detects excessive brake temperature.

## Feedback To The Driver

The instrument cluster has an HDC icon and the HDC switch has an LED icon, which offers feedback to the driver about the state HDC is in.

- The cluster icon and switch lamp will illuminate and remain on solid when HDC is enabled or activated. This is the normal operating condition for HDC.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when the driver pushes the HDC switch but enable conditions are not met.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when HDC disables due to excess speed.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash when HDC deactivates due to overheated brakes. The flashing will stop and HDC will activate again once the brakes have cooled sufficiently.

### WARNING!

**HDC is only intended to assist the driver in controlling vehicle speed when descending hills. The driver must remain attentive to the driving conditions and is responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle speed.**

## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle's tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning (Tire Pressure Monitoring [TPM] Telltale Light) illuminates, you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the TPM Telltale Light to turn off. The system will automatically update and the TPM Telltale Light will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

**NOTE:** When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (28 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 27 psi (186 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 23 psi (158 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn on the TPM Telltale Light. Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 27 psi (186 kPa), but the TPM Telltale Light

will still be on. In this situation, the TPM Telltale Light will turn off only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value.

### CAUTION!

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage.
- Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.
- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.

**NOTE:**

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPM Telltale Light.
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

**Premium System**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four tire pressure monitoring sensors
- Various tire pressure monitoring system messages, which display in the instrument cluster
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light

## Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings



The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An "Inflate to XX" message will also be displayed.

### EXAMPLE ONLY

Low Tire PSI  
 27  30  
 27  21  
 2345 mi

055900259

"LOW TIRE PRESSURE" Message

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the instrument cluster graphic) to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure inflation value as shown in the "Inflate to XX" message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system will automatically update, the graphic display in the instrument cluster will return to its original color, and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### Service TPMS Warning

If a system fault is detected, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a “SERVICE TPM SYSTEM” message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

## EXAMPLE ONLY



055900260

### Tire Pressure Monitor Display

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will no longer flash, and the “SERVICE TPM SYSTEM”

message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

A system fault may occur due to an incorrect TPM sensor location condition. When a system fault occurs due to an incorrect TPM sensor location, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a “Tire Pressure Temporarily Unavailable” message in place of the tire pressure display screen. If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will no longer



flash and the tire pressure display screen will be displayed showing the tire pressure values for the correct locations.

### **Vehicles With Non Matching Full Size Spare Or Compact Spare**

- The non matching full size spare or compact spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire.
- If you install the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, the TPM Telltale Light and a "LOW TIRE" message will remain ON and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the instrument cluster will still display a pressure value in a different color and an "Inflate to XX" message.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.

- For each subsequent ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound, the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the non matching full size spare or compact spare, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the TPM Telltale Light will turn OFF and the graphic in the instrument cluster will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### **Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) Chassis Cab — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS).

The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to

transmit tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPIS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications)
- Six TPM sensors (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications)
- Pressure display in the instrument cluster display.

The TPIS system will display all four (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications) or six (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications) tire pressure values in the instrument cluster display.

If a system fault is detected, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

### General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

### Occupant Restraint Systems Features

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

### Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint (refer to "Child Restraints" in this section for further information).
3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (refer to "Child Restraints" in this section for further information) should be secured in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.
4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the front air bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, refer to the "Customer Assistance" section for customer service contact information.

### **WARNING!**

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.**

## **Seat Belt Systems**

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

## **Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)**

### **Driver and Passenger BeltAlert (if equipped)**

 BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position.

### **Initial Indication**

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position, a chime will signal for

a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

### **BeltAlert Warning Sequence**

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) (the outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

### **Change of Status**

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by an authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

**NOTE:** If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

## Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Crew Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.
- In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

### WARNING! (Continued)

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly. Occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.
- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.

(Continued)

**WARNING!**

- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to an authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.
- A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.
- A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck

**WARNING! (Continued)**

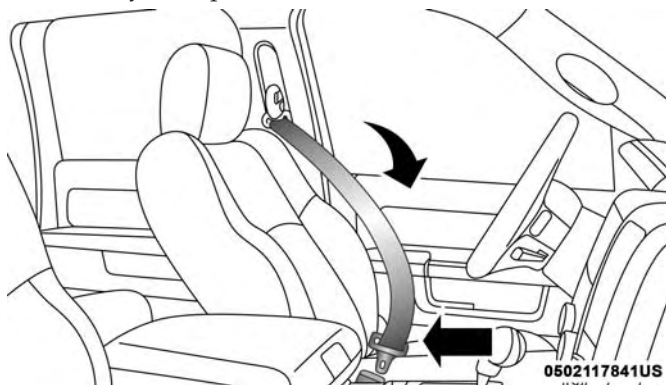
- injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.
- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.
  - A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.

**Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions**

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.

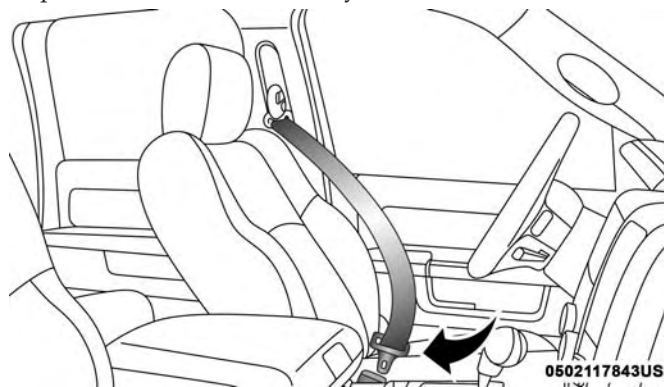
(Continued)

2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.



**Pulling Out The Latch Plate**

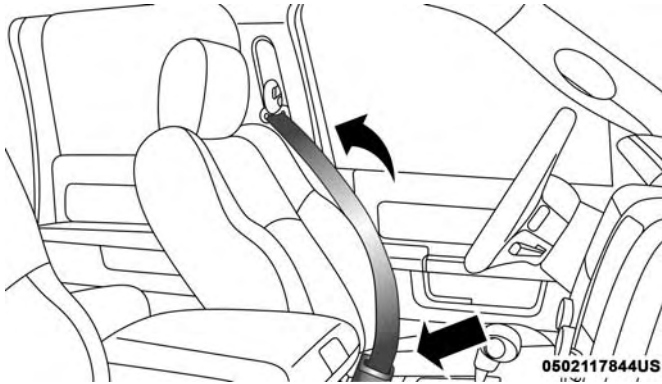
3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."



**Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle**



4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.



#### Positioning The Lap Belt

5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

#### Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure

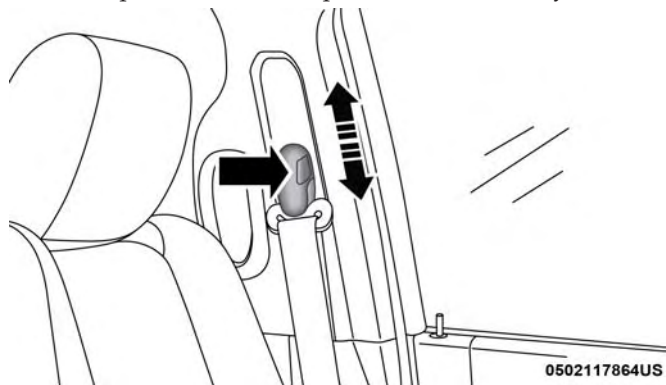
Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

5

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.
3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

## Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



**Adjustable Anchorage**

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

**NOTE:** The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

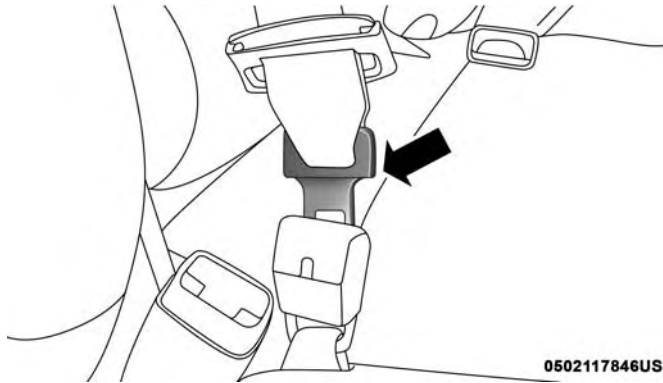
### **WARNING!**

- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
- Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.

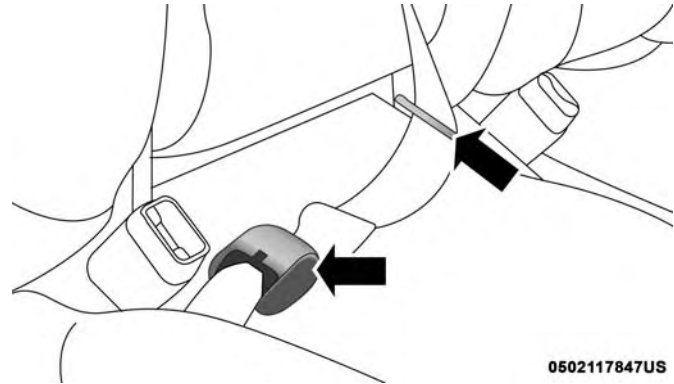
## First Row Center Seat Belt Operating Instructions (Regular Cab Only)

The first row center seat belt (Regular Cab only) features a seat belt with a mini-latch plate and buckle, which allows the seat belt to detach from the lower anchor when the seat is folded. The latch plate and regular latch plate can then be stored out of the way in the seat for added convenience to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats when the seat is not occupied.

1. Remove the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate from its stowed position on the seat.



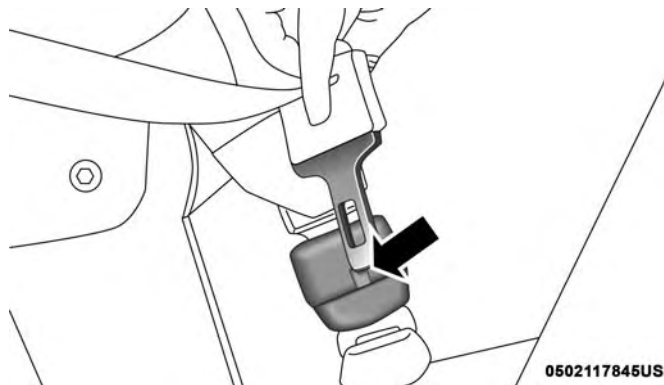
**Connect Mini-Latch To Mini-Buckle**



### Mini-Latch And Mini-Buckle Connected

2. Grasp the mini-latch plate and pull the seat belt over the seat.
3. Route the shoulder belt to the inside of the right head restraint.
4. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the mini-latch plate into the mini-buckle until you hear a "click."
5. Sit back in seat. Slide the regular latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.

6. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
7. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
8. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the seat belt.
9. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle.
10. To disengage the mini-latch plate from the mini-buckle for storage, insert the regular latch plate into the center red slot on the mini-buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully. Insert the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate into its stowed position.



Detaching Mini-Buckle With Seat Belt Tongue

### WARNING!

- If the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.
- When reattaching the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding

(Continued)

**WARNING! (Continued)**

procedure to detach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle.

**First Row Center Lap Belt Operating Instructions — If Equipped**

The center seating position for the Crew Cab front seat has a lap belt only. To buckle the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull.

To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and upright in the seat, then adjust the seat belt as tightly as is comfortable.

**Seat Belt Extender**

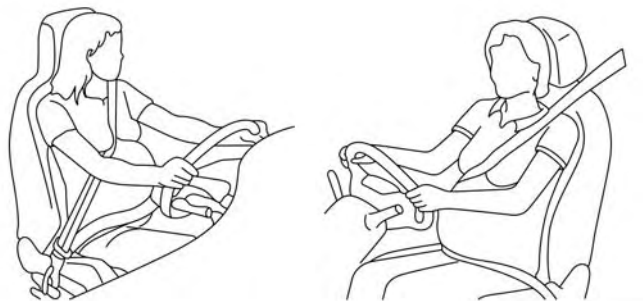
If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, an authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat

Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.

**WARNING!**

- **ONLY** use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. **DO NOT USE** the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is **LESS** than 6 inches.
- Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.

## Seat Belts And Pregnant Women



0228098654US

### Pregnant Women And Seat Belts

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

## Seat Belt Pretensioner — If Equipped

The front seat belt system may be equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

**NOTE:** These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

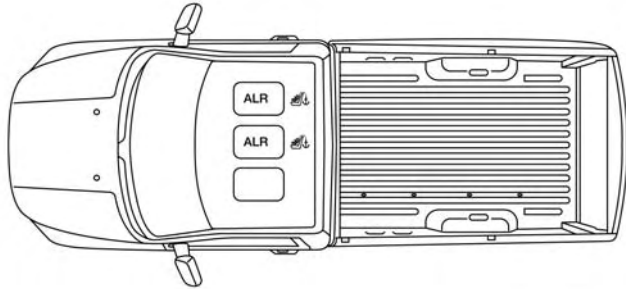
The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

## Energy Management Feature — If Equipped

The front seat belt system may be equipped with an Energy Management feature that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. The seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

## Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

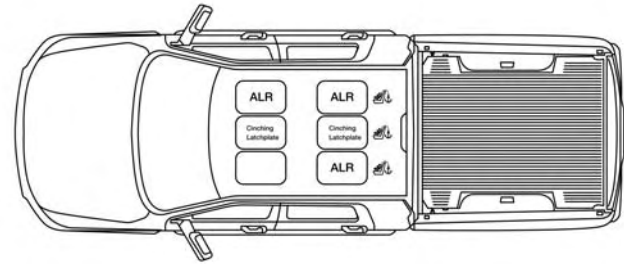
The seat belts in the passenger seating positions may be equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to “Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt” under the “Child Restraints” section of this manual. The figure below illustrates the locking feature for each seating position.



0502117873US

### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor



5

0502117874US

### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### **WARNING!**

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### **How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode**

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.

3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

### **How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode**

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

### **WARNING!**

- The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.
- Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.
- Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.



## Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS)

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

The air bag system must be ready to protect you in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with the electrical Air Bag System Components. Your vehicle may be equipped with the following Air Bag System Components:

### Air Bag System Components

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped

- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

### Air Bag Warning Light



The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the

ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bag system even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

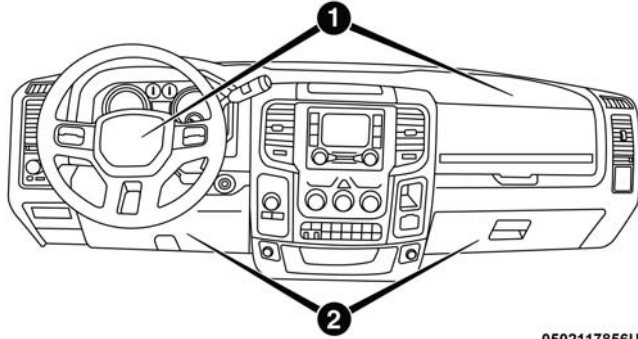
**NOTE:** If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

### **WARNING!**

**Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bag system to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.**

### **Front Air Bags**

This vehicle has front air bags and lap/shoulder belts for both the driver and front passenger. The front air bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver front air bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger front air bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" are embossed on the air bag covers.



0502117856US

### Front Air Bag/Knee Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver And Passenger Front Air Bags  
 2 — Driver And Passenger Knee Impact Bolsters

### WARNING!

- Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front air bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.

(Continued)

### WARNING! (Continued)

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

5

### Driver And Passenger Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt

buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

### **WARNING!**

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.
- Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.
- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

### **Front Air Bag Operation**

Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Front air bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or

rollover collisions. The front air bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, front air bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the front air bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the front air bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper passenger side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The front air

bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The front air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

### Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the front air bags.

#### WARNING!

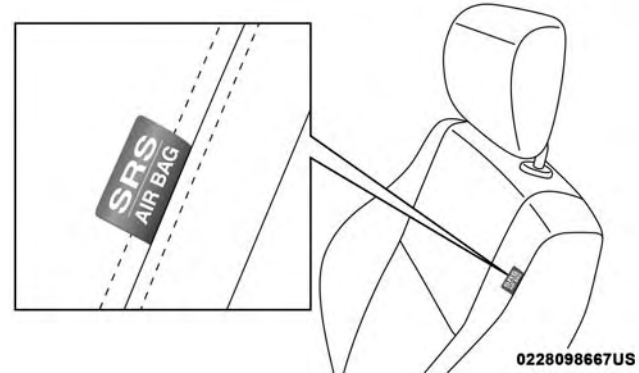
- Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.
- Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.

### Supplemental Side Air Bags

#### Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) are located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG” on a label or on the seat trim on the outboard side of the seats.



#### Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag Label

The SABs (if equipped with SABs) may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover. The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant

and the door. The SAB moves at a very high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

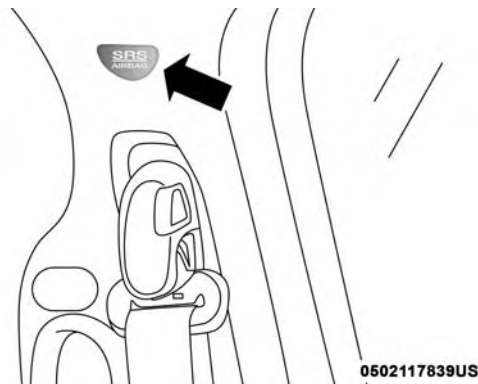
### WARNING!

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

### Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) are located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG.”



### Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Label Location

SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of head and other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABIC deploys downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are

positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

The SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain side impact events.

### **WARNING!**

- **Do not mount equipment, or stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.**
- **In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.**

### **Side Impacts**

The Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain side impacts. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular impact event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. The side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right-side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the front air bags deploy.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes.

### **WARNING!**

- Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the side air bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.
- Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from an inflating Side Air Bag. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.

### **WARNING!**

- Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.
- Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.
- Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.

**NOTE:** Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

### **Rollover Events (If Equipped With Rollover Sensing)**

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.



The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing-system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appropriate. A slower-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle. A faster-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners as well as the Side Air Bags on both sides of the vehicle. The rollover sensing-system may also deploy the seat belt pretensioners, with or without the Side Air Bags, on both sides of the vehicle if the vehicle experiences a near rollover event.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

### Air Bag System Components

**NOTE:** The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

### If A Deployment Occurs

The front air bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

**NOTE:** Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.

- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

### **WARNING!**

**Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.**

### **NOTE:**

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

### **Enhanced Accident Response System**

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine (If Equipped)
- Cut off battery power to the electric motor (If Equipped)
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or for 15 minutes from the intervention of the Enhanced Accident Response System.
- Unlock the power door locks.

Your vehicle may also be designed to perform any of these other functions in response to the Enhanced Accident Response System:

- Turn off the Fuel Filter Heater, Turn off the HVAC Blower Motor, Close the HVAC Circulation Door
- Cut off battery power to the:
  - Engine
  - Electric Motor (if equipped)
  - Electric power steering
  - Brake booster
  - Electric park brake
  - Automatic transmission gear selector
  - Horn
  - Front wiper
  - Headlamp washer pump

**NOTE:** After an accident, remember to cycle the ignition to the STOP (OFF/LOCK) position and remove the key from the ignition switch to avoid draining the battery. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine. If there are no fuel leaks or damage to the vehicle electrical devices (e.g. headlights) after an accident, reset the system by following the procedure described below.

### **Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure**

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition switch must be changed from ignition START or ON/RUN to ignition OFF. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

## Maintaining Your Air Bag System

### WARNING!

- Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper passenger side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.
- It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.
- Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to an authorized

### WARNING! (Continued)

dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact an authorized dealer.

### Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

(Continued)

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Child Restraints

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

### WARNING!

**In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured or killed. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.**

5

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

**NOTE:**

- For additional information, refer to [www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm](http://www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm) or call: 1-888-327-4236
- Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: <http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm>

**Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles**

|                                         | <b>Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age</b>                                                                                     | <b>Recommended Type Of Child Restraint</b>                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Infants and Toddlers                    | Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint      | Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle |
| Small Children                          | Children who are at least two years old or who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint | Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle   |
| Larger Children                         | Children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt   | Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle            |
| Children Too Large for Child Restraints | Children 12 years old or younger, who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their booster seat                         | Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle                                                  |

## Infant And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

### WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.**

**WARNING!**

Do not install a rear-facing car seat using a rear support leg in this vehicle. The floor of this vehicle is not designed to manage the crash forces of this type of car seat. In a crash, the support leg may not function as it was designed by the car seat manufacturer, and your child may be more severely injured as a result.



0226047161

**Older Children And Child Restraints**

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.



**WARNING!**

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the child restraint.**
- **When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.**

**Children Too Large For Booster Seats**

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback,

should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while the child is still sitting all the way back?
3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not the stomach?
5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was “no,” then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position. If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

**WARNING!**

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.

**Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints**

| Restraint Type                 | Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint | Use Any Attachment Method Shown With An "X" Below |                |                                           |                               |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                |                                                | LATCH – Lower Anchors Only                        | Seat Belt Only | LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor | Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor |
| Rear-Facing Child Restraint    | Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                         | X                                                 | X              |                                           |                               |
| Rear-Facing Child Restraint    | More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                     |                                                   | X              |                                           |                               |
| Forward-Facing Child Restraint | Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                         |                                                   |                | X                                         | X                             |
| Forward-Facing Child Restraint | More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                     |                                                   |                |                                           | X                             |

## Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children (LATCH) Restraint System



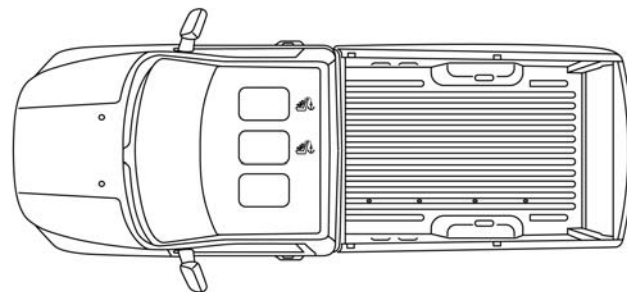
022668173

### LATCH Label

Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be

used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

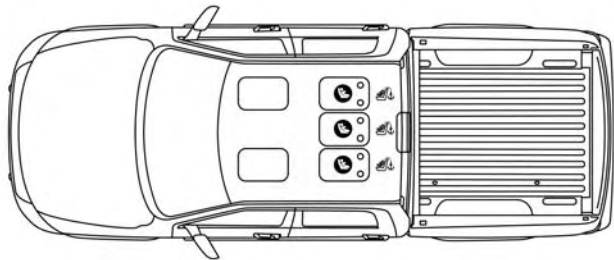
### LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



0502117857US

### Regular Cab LATCH Positions

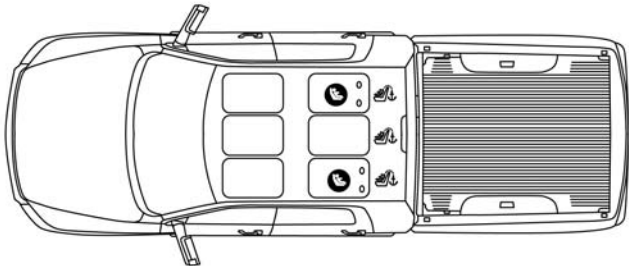
 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0502117872US

**Crew Cab 60/40 Split Bench LATCH Positions**

- Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0502117862US

**Crew Cab Full Bench LATCH Positions**

- Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

| Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH                                                                       |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint? | 65 lbs (29.5 kg) | Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg). |

### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

|                                                                                                                        |    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint? | No | Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint. Booster seats may be attached to the LATCH anchorages if allowed by the booster seat manufacturer. See your booster seat owner's manual for more information. |
| Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorages?                           | No | Full bench rear seat only: Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?                                             | No | Never "share" a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.       |

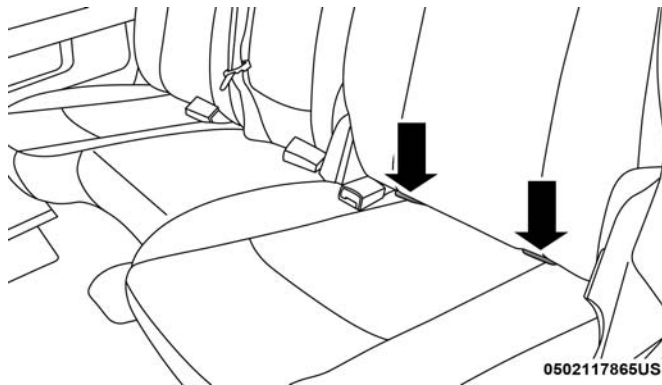
### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

|                                                                                 |     |                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat? | Yes | The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information. |
| Can the head restraints be removed?                                             | Yes | The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.                                                                                                                         |

### Locating The LATCH Anchorages — Crew Cab Only



The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



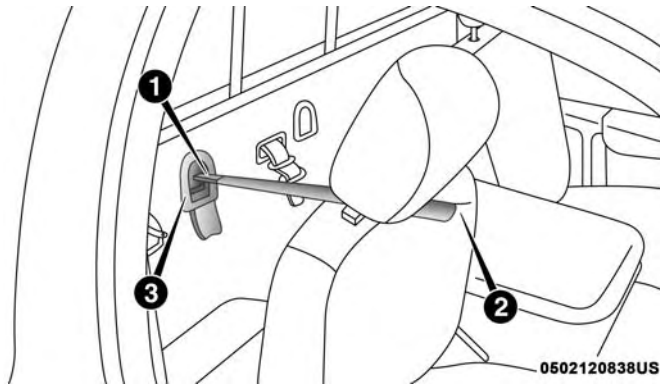
Crew Cab Rear Outboard Seats Driver Side

0502117865US

## Locating The Upper Tether Anchorages

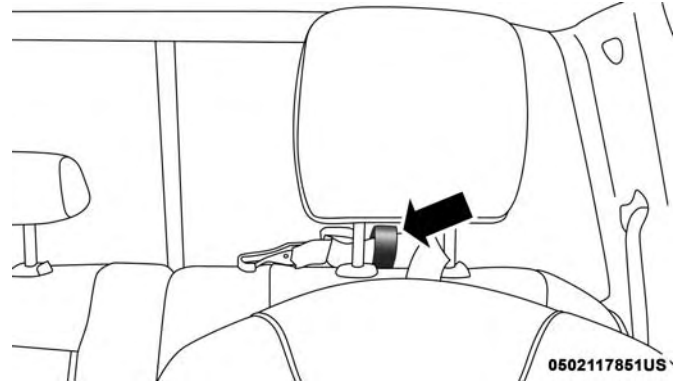


Regular Cab models have tether strap anchorages behind the front center and right seats. Crew Cab models have tether strap anchorages located behind each of the rear seats.

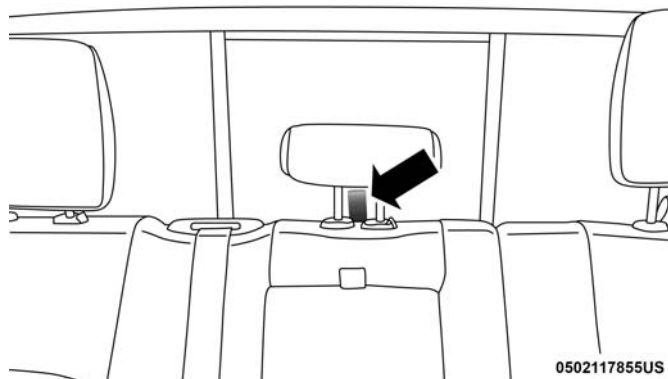


**Regular Cab Tether Anchorages (Behind Covers)**

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor



**Crew Cab Outboard Tether Anchorage**



**Crew Cab Center Tether Anchorage With Head Restraint  
In Raised Position**

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

## Center Seat LATCH

**Regular Cab Or Crew Cab Full Bench Rear Seat: No  
Lower Center LATCH Anchorages Available**

### **WARNING!**

- Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.
- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint.
- Please refer to "To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint" for typical installation instructions.

## **Crew Cab Split Bench Rear Seat: Center LATCH Anchorages Available**

If a child restraint installed in the center position blocks the seat belt webbing or buckle for the outboard position, do not use that outboard position. If a child seat in the center position blocks the outboard LATCH anchors or seat belt, do not install a child seat in that outboard position.



**WARNING!**

Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint.  
Please refer to “To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint” for typical installation instructions.

Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.

**To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint**

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt” to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.
4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

### How To Stow An Unused Switchable-ALR (ALR) Seat Belt:

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child's reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.

#### **WARNING!**

- Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

### Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

#### **WARNING!**

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

*(Continued)*

## Regular Cab Only

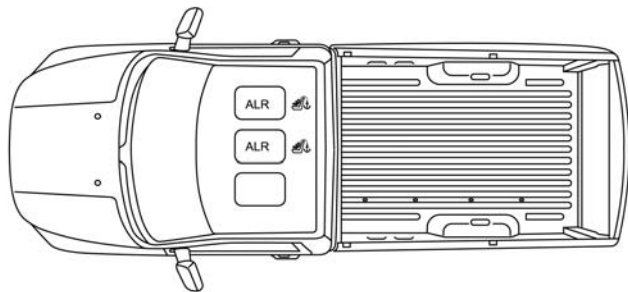
The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) that is designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be “switched” into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the “Automatic Locking Mode” description in “Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)” under “Occupant Restraint Systems” for additional information on ALR.

## Crew Cab: Split Bench And Full Bench

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be “switched” into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the “Automatic Locking Mode” description in “Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)” under “Occupant Restraint Systems” for additional information on ALR. The cinching latch plate is designed to hold the lap portion of the seat belt tight when webbing is pulled tight and straight through a child restraint’s belt path.

Please see the table below and the following sections for more information.

## Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle

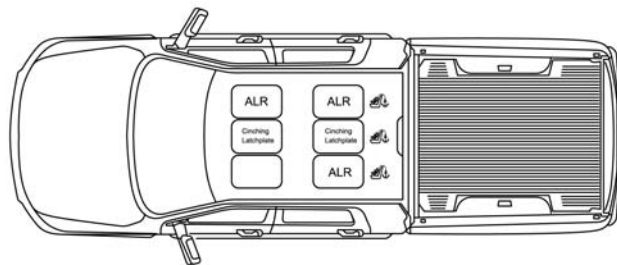


0502117859US

### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0502117860US

### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

Cinching Latchplate = Cinching Latchplate

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

| Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts                                                                                         |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint? | Weight limit of the Child Restraint    | Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.                   |
| Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?                                                                                      | Yes                                    | Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.                                           |
| Can the head restraints be removed?                                                                                                                                  | Yes                                    | The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.                                                                                                                    |
| Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?                                                               | Yes – Cinching Latch Plate<br>No – ALR | In positions with cinching latch plates (CINCH), the buckle stalk may be twisted up to 3 full turns. Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor. |

### Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR):

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.**
- **Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**

#### 1. For Crew Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

#### For Regular Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. Move the vehicle seat as far rearward as possible to keep the child as far from the passenger air bag as possible.

2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.
5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.

7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

### **Installing A Child Restraint With A Cinching Latch Plate (CINCH) — If Equipped:**

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

### **WARNING!**

- **Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.**
- **Follow the child restraint manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
2. Next, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
4. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.

5. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

If the buckle or the cinching latch plate is too close to the belt path opening of the child restraint, you may have trouble tightening the seat belt. If this happens, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt up to three full turns to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out, away from the child restraint. Repeat steps 4 to 6, above, to complete the installation of the child restraint.

If the belt still cannot be tightened after you shorten the buckle, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around one half turn, and insert the latch plate into

the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint installation tight, try a different seating position.

### Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage

#### WARNING!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section “Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) Restraint System” for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.



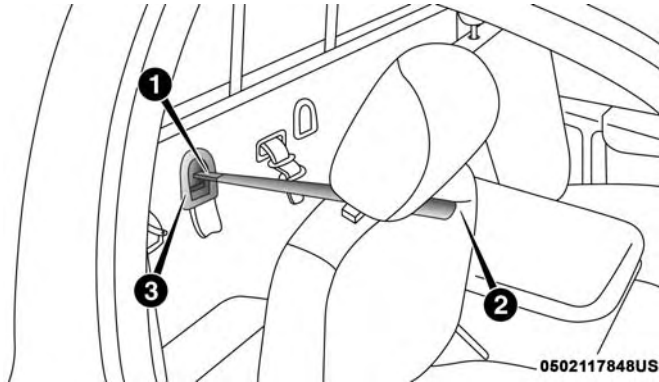
0226047162



## Regular Cab Trucks:

In the regular cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind the center and right passenger seats. There is a plastic cover over each anchorage. To attach the tether strap of the child restraint:

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint and to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.



**Regular Cab Tether Anchorages**

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchorage and the child seat. The tether strap should go between the head restraint posts underneath the head restraint. You may need to adjust the head restraint to the upward position to pass the tether strap underneath the head restraint and between its posts.
3. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

5

### WARNING!

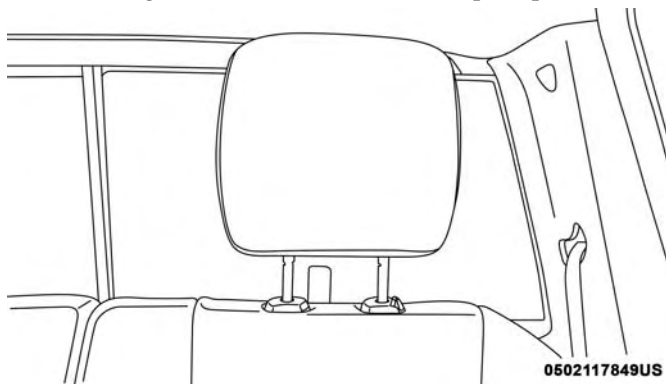
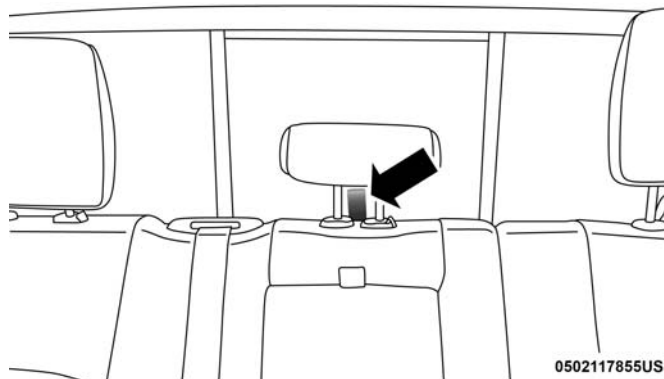
Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

## Crew Cab Trucks:

The top tether anchorages in this vehicle are tether strap loops located between the rear glass and the back of the rear seat. There is a tether strap loop located behind each seating position. Follow the steps below to attach the tether strap of the child restraint.

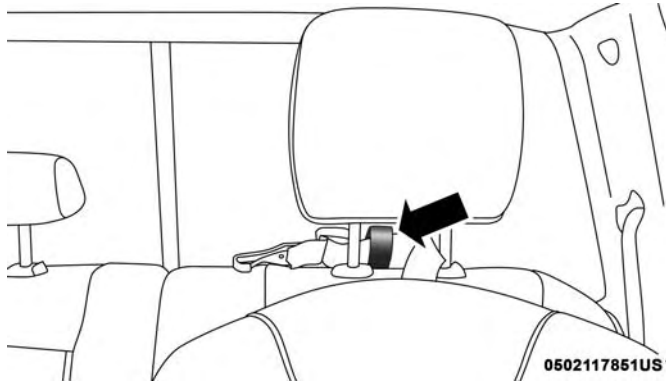
**Right Or Left Outboard Seats:**

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.

**Head Restraint In Raised Position****Tether Strap Loop With Center Head Restraint In Raised Position**

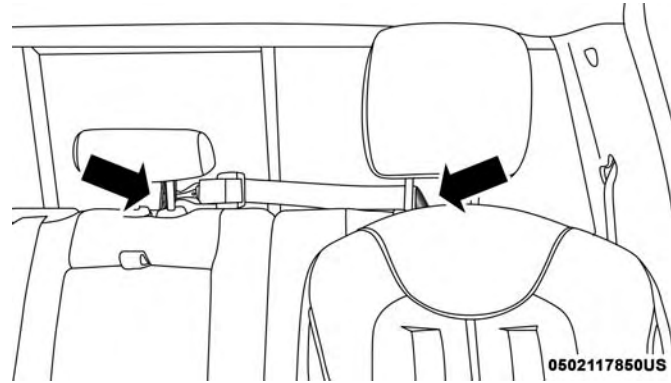
2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind the center seat.

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the center tether strap loop.



**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

4. Attach the hook to the center tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

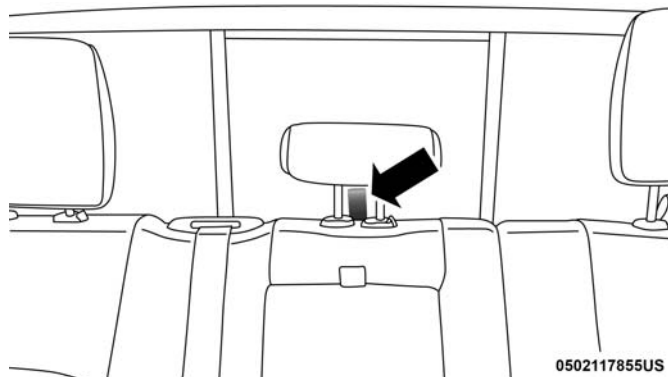
**5**

**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Center Tether Strap Loop**

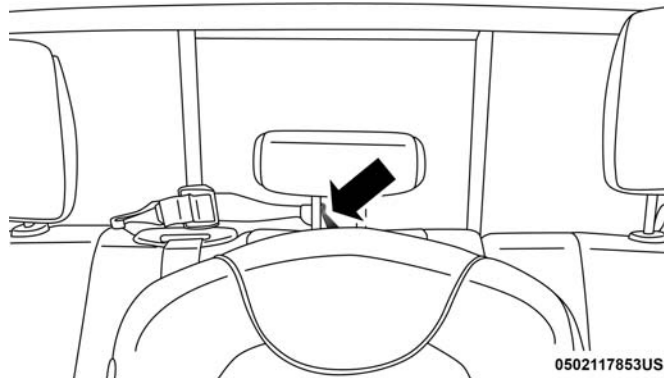
**NOTE:** If there are child seats in both of the outboard (left and right) seating positions, the tether strap hooks of both child seats should be connected to the center tether strap loop. This is the correct way to tether two outboard child seats.

**Center Seat:**

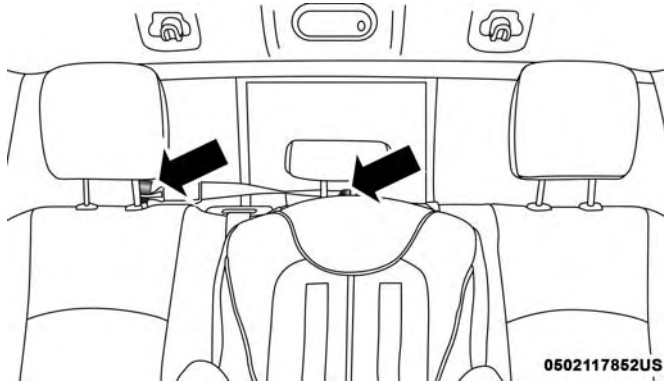
1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.

**Tether Strap Loop With Head Restraint In Raised Position**

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind either the right or left outboard seat.
3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the right or left outboard tether strap loop.

**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop**

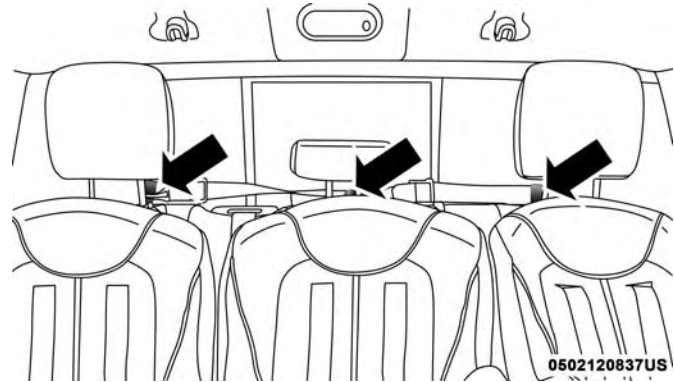
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

#### **Installing Three Child Restraints:**

1. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat. Route the tether straps following the directions for right and left seating positions, above.
2. Attach both hooks to the center tether strap loop, but do not tighten the straps yet.
3. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat. Route the tether strap following the directions for the center seating position, above.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop.
5. Tighten the tether straps according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions, tightening the right and left tether straps before the center tether strap.



**Outboard And Center Seating Positions Shown**

**WARNING!**

- An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.

**Transporting Pets**

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

**SAFETY TIPS****Transporting Passengers**

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

**WARNING!**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

## Exhaust Gas

### WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the

vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

## Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

### Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

### Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light  will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving,

have the system inspected at your authorized dealer as soon as possible. After the bulb check, this light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag System has been detected. It will stay on until the fault is removed. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have your authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.

Refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.

### Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

### Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. Only use a floor mat that does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals. Only use a floor mat that is securely attached using the floor mat fasteners so it

cannot slip out of position and interfere with the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

#### WARNING!

**An improperly attached, damaged, folded, or stacked floor mat, or damaged floor mat fasteners may cause your floor mat to interfere with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and cause a loss of vehicle control. To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:**

- **ALWAYS** securely attach  your floor mat using the floor mat fasteners. **DO NOT** install your floor mat upside down or turn your floor mat over. Lightly pull to confirm mat is secured using the floor mat fasteners on a regular basis.
- **ALWAYS REMOVE THE EXISTING FLOOR MAT FROM THE VEHICLE**  before installing any other floor mat. **NEVER** install or stack an additional floor mat on top of an existing floor mat.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **ONLY** install floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. **NEVER** install a floor mat that cannot be properly attached and secured to your vehicle. If a floor mat needs to be replaced, only use a FCA approved floor mat for the specific make, model, and year of your vehicle.
- **ONLY** use the driver's side floor mat on the driver's side floor area. To check for interference, with the vehicle properly parked with the engine off, fully depress the accelerator, the brake, and the clutch pedal (if present) to check for interference. If your floor mat interferes with the operation of any pedal, or is not secure to the floor, remove the floor mat from the vehicle and place the floor mat in your trunk.
- **ONLY** use the passenger's side floor mat on the passenger's side floor area.
- **ALWAYS** make sure objects cannot fall or slide into the driver's side floor area when the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and could cause a loss of vehicle control.

(Continued)

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **NEVER** place any objects under the floor mat (e.g., towels, keys, etc.). These objects could change the position of the floor mat and may cause interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals.
- If the vehicle carpet has been removed and re-installed, always properly attach carpet to the floor and check the floor mat fasteners are secure to the vehicle carpet. Fully depress each pedal to check for interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals then re-install the floor mats.
- It is recommended to only use mild soap and water to clean your floor mats. After cleaning, always check your floor mat has been properly installed and is secured to your vehicle using the floor mat fasteners by lightly pulling mat.

**Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle****Tires**

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges.

Check the wheel bolts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

### **Lights**

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

### **Door Latches**

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

### **Fluid Leaks**

Check area under the vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.

# STARTING AND OPERATING

## CONTENTS

|                                                              |     |                                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ STARTING THE ENGINE —<br>GASOLINE ENGINE . . . . .         | 244 | □ Six-Speed Automatic Transmission —<br>If Equipped . . . . .                            | 252 |
| □ Automatic Transmission . . . . .                           | 244 | ■ FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION —<br>IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                                  | 261 |
| □ Normal Starting. . . . .                                   | 244 | □ Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped . . . . .                                 | 261 |
| □ Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition . . . . .                    | 246 | □ Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position<br>Switch) — If Equipped . . . . . | 265 |
| □ If Engine Fails To Start . . . . .                         | 247 | ■ LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL . . . . .                                                    | 270 |
| □ Cold Weather Operation<br>(Below -22°F Or -30°C) . . . . . | 248 | ■ POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED<br>(CHASSIS CAB ONLY) . . . . .                 | 270 |
| □ After Starting. . . . .                                    | 248 | □ Stationary Mode . . . . .                                                              | 271 |
| ■ ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                | 248 | □ Mobile Mode. . . . .                                                                   | 272 |
| ■ ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS . . . . .                  | 248 | ■ POWER STEERING. . . . .                                                                | 273 |
| ■ PARKING BRAKE . . . . .                                    | 249 | □ Hydraulic Power Steering . . . . .                                                     | 273 |
| ■ AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION . . . . .                           | 251 | ■ SPEED CONTROL . . . . .                                                                | 274 |
| □ Key Ignition Park Interlock. . . . .                       | 252 |                                                                                          |     |
| □ Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System . . . . .        | 252 |                                                                                          |     |

|                                                                   |     |                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| □ To Activate . . . . .                                           | 275 | □ ParkSense Warning Display. . . . .                              | 285 |
| □ To Set A Desired Speed. . . . .                                 | 275 | □ ParkSense Display . . . . .                                     | 285 |
| □ To Vary The Speed Setting . . . . .                             | 275 | □ Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or Rear<br>ParkSense . . . . . | 287 |
| □ To Accelerate For Passing . . . . .                             | 276 | □ Service The ParkSense Park Assist System . . . .                | 288 |
| □ To Resume Speed . . . . .                                       | 277 | □ Cleaning The ParkSense System. . . . .                          | 288 |
| □ To Deactivate . . . . .                                         | 277 | □ ParkSense System Usage Precautions . . . . .                    | 289 |
| ■ PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST —<br>IF EQUIPPED . . . . .           | 277 | ■ PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA — IF<br>EQUIPPED . . . . .         | 290 |
| □ ParkSense Sensors . . . . .                                     | 277 | ■ REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS . . . . .                           | 293 |
| □ ParkSense Warning Display. . . . .                              | 278 | □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message . . . . .                         | 294 |
| □ ParkSense Display . . . . .                                     | 278 | □ Materials Added To Fuel . . . . .                               | 294 |
| □ Enabling And Disabling ParkSense . . . . .                      | 281 | ■ VEHICLE LOADING . . . . .                                       | 294 |
| □ Service The ParkSense Rear Park Assist System. .                | 281 | □ Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . . .                    | 294 |
| □ Cleaning The ParkSense System. . . . .                          | 282 | □ Payload. . . . .                                                | 295 |
| □ ParkSense System Usage Precautions . . . . .                    | 282 | □ Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . . . . .                       | 295 |
| ■ PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST —<br>IF EQUIPPED . . . . . | 284 | □ Tire Size . . . . .                                             | 295 |
| □ ParkSense Sensors . . . . .                                     | 284 | □ Rim Size . . . . .                                              | 295 |

|                                                                        |     |                                                              |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| □ Inflation Pressure . . . . .                                         | 295 | ■ SNOWPLOW . . . . .                                         | 310 |
| □ Curb Weight . . . . .                                                | 295 | □ 2500/3500 Models Only . . . . .                            | 310 |
| □ Loading . . . . .                                                    | 295 | ■ RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND<br>MOTORHOME, ETC.) . . . . .  | 313 |
| ■ TRAILER TOWING . . . . .                                             | 296 | □ Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle. . .            | 313 |
| □ Common Towing Definitions. . . . .                                   | 296 | □ Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive<br>Models . . . . .  | 314 |
| □ Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer<br>Weight . . . . .           | 300 | □ Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive<br>Models . . . . . | 314 |
| □ Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer<br>Weight Ratings) . . . . . | 301 | ■ DRIVING TIPS . . . . .                                     | 318 |
| □ Trailer And Tongue Weight . . . . .                                  | 301 | □ Driving On Slippery Surfaces . . . . .                     | 318 |
| □ Towing Requirements . . . . .                                        | 302 | □ Driving Through Water . . . . .                            | 318 |
| □ Towing Tips . . . . .                                                | 309 |                                                              |     |

**STARTING THE ENGINE — GASOLINE ENGINE**

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belt.

The starter should not be operated for more than 10-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

**WARNING!**

- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the "OFF" mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.

**Automatic Transmission**

Start the engine with the gear selector in the NEUTRAL or PARK. Apply the brake before shifting into any driving range.

**NOTE:** This vehicle is equipped with a transmission shift interlocking system. The brake pedal must be pressed to shift out of PARK.

**Tip Start Feature**

**Do not** press the accelerator. Cycle the ignition switch briefly to the START position and release it. The starter motor will continue to run and will automatically disengage when the engine is running.

**Normal Starting**

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal. Cycle the ignition to the RUN position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds,

cycle the ignition to the OFF position, wait five seconds, then repeat the “Normal Starting” procedure.

### **To Turn On The Engine Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. Transmission must be in PARK or NEUTRAL.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 10 seconds.
4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, push the button again.

**NOTE:** Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.

### **To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.

2. The ignition switch will return to the OFF mode.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK (with vehicle stopped) and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once, the transmission will automatically select PARK and the engine will turn off, however the ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode). Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.
4. If the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h), the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds (or three short pushes in a row) to turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode) if the engine is turned off when the transmission is not in PARK.

**NOTE:** If the ignition switch is left in the ACC or RUN (engine not running) mode and the transmission is in PARK, the system will automatically time out after 30 minutes of inactivity and the ignition will switch to the OFF mode.

### Idle Shutdown — 6.4L Engine Only

This feature can be enabled so that the truck will automatically shutdown when the truck has been idling for a set period of time when the engine is at operating temperature. Idle time can be set in 5 minute increments between 5 and 60 minutes. See your local authorized dealer to enable this feature.

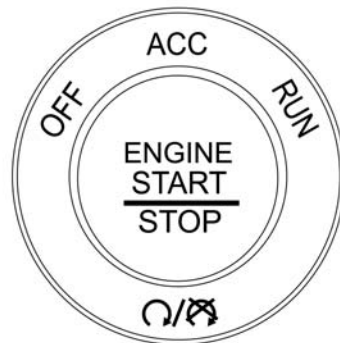
**NOTE:** The idle shut down timer is disabled while the PTO is active.

### ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three positions, OFF, ACC, RUN. To change the ignition switch positions without starting the vehicle and use the accessories follow these steps:

1. Starting with the ignition in the OFF position:
2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to change the ignition to the ACC position.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to change the ignition to the RUN position.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF position.

### Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition



0101113902US

### Keyless Push Button Ignition

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the Remote Start/Keyless Enter-N-Go key fob is in the passenger compartment.



## If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the “Normal Starting” procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while the engine is cranking. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

The starter motor will engage automatically, run for 10 seconds, and then disengage. Once this occurs, release the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the “Normal Starting” procedure.

### WARNING!

- Never pour fuel or other flammable liquid into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in flash fire causing serious personal injury.
- Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.

(Continued)

### WARNING! (Continued)

- If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to “Jump Starting Procedure” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### CAUTION!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

6

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the ignition button/key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the ignition button/key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after a 10 second period of engine cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the “Normal Starting” procedure.

### Cold Weather Operation (Below $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ Or $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ )

To ensure reliable starting at these temperatures, use of an externally powered electric engine block heater (available from your authorized dealer) is recommended.

#### After Starting

The idle speed is controlled automatically, and it will decrease as the engine warms up.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms the engine, and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

#### Gasoline Engine Only

The engine block heater cord is routed through the grille by the right front tow hook.

It includes a removable cap that is secured by a tethered strap. It also has a c-clip that is used for storage when not in use for the Winter months. During Winter months, remove the heater cord wiring assembly from itself on the c-clip.

The engine block heater must be plugged in at least one hour to have an adequate warming effect on the engine.

#### WARNING!

**Remember to disconnect the engine block heater cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 Volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.**

### ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions

under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades, refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications”.

### CAUTION!

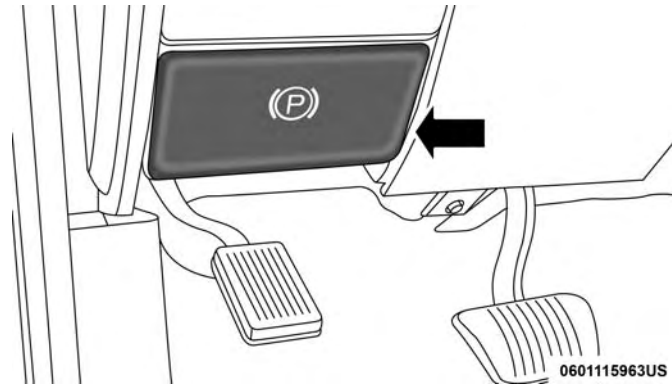
**Never use Non-Detergent Oil or Straight Mineral Oil in the engine or damage may result.**

**NOTE:** A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as a problem. Please check your oil level with the engine oil indicator often during the break in period. Add oil as required.

### PARKING BRAKE

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is fully applied. Also, be certain to leave the transmission in PARK.

The foot operated parking brake is located below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To apply the park brake, firmly push the park brake pedal fully. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.



### Parking Brake Release

When the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch ON, the “Brake Warning Light” in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

### NOTE:

- When the parking brake is applied and the transmission is placed in gear, the “Brake Warning Light” will flash. If vehicle speed is detected, a chime will sound to alert the driver. Fully release the parking brake before attempting to move the vehicle.
- This light only shows that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

When parking on a hill, it is important to turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade. Apply the parking brake before placing the gear selector in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the gear selector out of PARK. The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.
- Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also, be certain to leave the transmission in PARK. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.

**CAUTION!**

If the Brake System Warning Light remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

(Continued)

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION****WARNING!**

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always come to a complete stop, then apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, (or, with Keyless Enter-N-Go, when the ignition is in the OFF mode) the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before exiting the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.
- Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

**NOTE:** You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.

**Key Ignition Park Interlock**

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition can be turned to the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position. The key fob can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position.

**NOTE:** If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key fob in the ignition to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key fob cannot be removed until you obtain service.

**Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System**

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock system (BTSI) that holds the transmission gear selector in PARK unless the brakes are applied. To shift the transmission out of PARK, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

**Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped**

Chassis Cab models (with automatic transmission) may use either the AS66RC transmission (which is equipped with a Power Take-Off (PTO) access cover on the side of the transmission case), or the 66RFE transmission (which has no PTO access cover).

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The gear selector is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of PARK (refer to “Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System” in this section). To

drive, move the gear selector from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the gear selector toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control. Pushing the ERS (-/+ ) switches (on the gear selector) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information. Some models will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

## Gear Ranges

Do not depress the accelerator pedal when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range.

**NOTE:** After selecting any gear range, wait a moment to allow the selected gear to engage before accelerating. This is especially important when the engine is cold.

### PARK (P)

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never attempt to use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when exiting the vehicle in this range.

When parking on a level surface, you may shift the transmission into PARK first, and then apply the parking brake.

When parking on a hill, apply the parking brake before shifting the transmission to PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the gear selector out of PARK. As an added precaution, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

**NOTE:** On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position.

When exiting the vehicle, always:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission into PARK.
- Turn the engine OFF.
- Remove the key fob.

### **WARNING!**

- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before exiting the vehicle.
- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always come to a complete stop, then apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position (or, with Keyless Enter-N-Go, when the ignition is in the OFF mode), the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
  - When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
  - Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.

- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

- Before moving the transmission gear selector out of PARK, you must turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, and also press the brake pedal. Otherwise, damage to the gear selector could result.
- DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range, as this can damage the drivetrain.

The following indicators should be used to ensure that you have properly engaged the transmission into the PARK position:

- When shifting into PARK, pull the gear selector toward you and move it all the way counterclockwise until it stops.
- Release the gear selector and make sure it is fully seated in the PARK gate.
- Look at the transmission gear position display and verify that it indicates the PARK position (P).
- With brake pedal released, verify that the gear selector will not move out of PARK.

**6****REVERSE (R)**

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Shift into REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

**NEUTRAL (N)**

Use this range when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into PARK if you must exit the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

Do not coast in NEUTRAL and never turn off the ignition to coast down a hill. These are unsafe practices that limit your response to changing traffic or road conditions. You might lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

**CAUTION!**

Towing the vehicle, coasting, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in NEUTRAL can cause severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" and "Towing A Disabled Vehicle" in "In Case Of Emergency" for further information.

**DRIVE (D)**

This range should be used for most city and highway driving. It provides the smoothest upshifts and downshifts, and the best fuel economy. The transmission automatically upshifts through underdrive first, second, and third gears, direct fourth gear and overdrive fifth and sixth gears. The DRIVE position provides optimum driving characteristics under all normal operating conditions.

When frequent transmission shifting occurs (such as when operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions, in hilly terrain, traveling into strong head winds, or while towing a heavy trailer), use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information) to select a lower gear range. Under these conditions, using a lower gear range will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

If the transmission temperature exceeds normal operating limits, the powertrain controller will modify the transmission shift schedule and expand the range of torque converter clutch engagement. This is done to prevent transmission damage due to overheating.

If the transmission becomes extremely hot or is in danger of overheating, the "Transmission Temperature Warning Light" may illuminate and the transmission may operate differently until the transmission cools down.

**NOTE:** Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle at low speeds (such as towing a trailer up a steep grade, or in stop-and-go traffic) during hot weather. In these conditions, torque converter slip can impose a significant additional heat load on the cooling system. Downshifting the transmission to the lowest possible gear (when climbing a grade), or shifting to NEUTRAL (when stopped in heavy traffic) can help to reduce this excess heat generation.

During cold temperatures, transmission operation may be modified depending on engine and transmission temperature as well as vehicle speed. This feature improves warm up time of the engine and transmission to achieve maximum efficiency. Engagement of the torque converter clutch is inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm (refer to the “Note” under “Torque Converter Clutch” in this section).

On models with 66RFE transmission, top overdrive gear is also inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm, and during extremely cold temperatures (-16°F [-27°C] or below), operation may briefly be limited to first and direct gears only. On trucks with AS66RC transmission, fifth and sixth gears may be inhibited briefly on cold starts below 41°F (5°C), and during very cold temperatures (-4°F [-20°C]

or below), operation may briefly be limited to third gear only. During this condition, the ability of the vehicle to accelerate under heavily loaded conditions may be reduced. In all cases, normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

### Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in fourth gear (for 66RFE transmission) or third gear (for AS66RC transmission) regardless of which forward gear is selected. If an AS66RC equipped truck enters Limp Home Mode at highway speeds, it will initially engage fifth gear, until the vehicle slows to a speed where third gear can be engaged. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.

2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition OFF.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.
6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

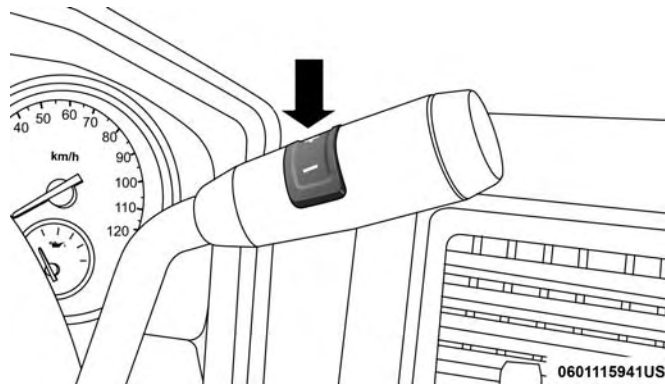
**NOTE:** Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to assess the condition of your transmission.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

### Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the gear selector is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



**Electronic Range Select**

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the ERS (+) switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

**WARNING!**

**Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.**

**NOTE:** To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply push and hold the ERS (-) switch. The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.

**CAUTION!**

**When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.**

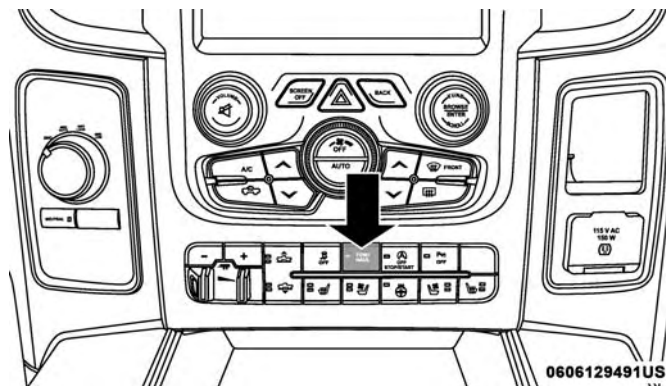
**Overdrive Operation**

The automatic transmission includes an electronically controlled Overdrive (fifth and sixth gears). The transmission will automatically shift into Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- The gear selector is in the DRIVE position.
- The transmission fluid has reached an adequate temperature.
- The engine coolant has reached an adequate temperature.
- Vehicle speed is sufficiently high.
- The TOW/HAUL switch has not been activated.
- The driver is not heavily pressing the accelerator.

## When To Use TOW/HAUL Mode

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, push the TOW/HAUL switch to activate TOW/HAUL mode. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in TOW/HAUL mode, transmission upshifts are delayed, and the transmission will automatically downshift (for engine braking) when the throttle is closed and/or during steady braking maneuvers.



TOW/HAUL Switch

The “TOW/HAUL Indicator Light” will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate that TOW/HAUL mode has been activated. Pushing the switch a second time restores normal operation. Normal operation is always the default at engine start-up. If TOW/HAUL mode is desired, the switch must be pushed each time the engine is started.

## WARNING!

**Do not use the “TOW/HAUL” feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions. The increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide, and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.**

## Torque Converter Clutch

A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in the upper gears. When the vehicle speed drops or during some accelerations, the clutch automatically disengages.

**NOTE:**

- The torque converter clutch will not engage (and 66RFE-equipped trucks will not shift to sixth gear), until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1 to 3 miles (2 to 5 km) of driving]. Because engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting properly when cold. This is normal. Using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Over-drive.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds after starting the engine.

**FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED**

Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for your transfer case, located in this section for further information.

**Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped**

The transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2H)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4H)
- Neutral (N)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4L)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

**6****2H**

Two-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

**4H**

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

**NEUTRAL (N)**

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

## 4L

**Four-Wheel Drive Low Range** — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2H position for normal street and highway conditions such as dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the gear selector to the desired positions once the appropriate speed and gear requirements are met, refer to “Shifting Procedure – Manually Shifted Transfer Case” in this section for further information.

The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry, hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The “Transfer Case Position Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will alert the driver that the vehicle is in

four-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into either the 4H or 4L position. There is no light for the 2H or NEUTRAL positions on some models.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the drivetrain.

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

**NOTE:** Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.



**WARNING!**

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

**Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2H)**

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

**Four-Wheel Drive High Range (4H)**

Four-Wheel Drive High Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

**Neutral (N)**

Neutral — This range disengages the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

**Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4L)**

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

**CAUTION!**

**Do not use 4L (Low) range when operating the vehicle on dry pavement. Driveline hardware damage can result.**

## Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case

### *2H To 4H*

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

### *2H Or 4H To 4L*

**NOTE:** When shifting into or out of 4L some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transmission into NEUTRAL. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case NEUTRAL.

## NOTE:

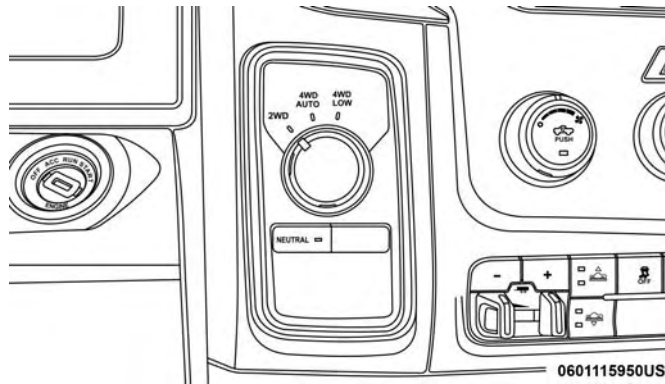
- Pausing in transfer case NEUTRAL in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, hold your foot on the brake, and turn the engine OFF. Complete the range shift to the desired mode.
- Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
- Do not attempt to shift into or out of 4L while the transmission is in gear.

## Transfer Case Position Indicator Light

The “Transfer Case Position Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

## Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped

The electronic shift transfer case is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



Four-Position/Part Time Transfer Case

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

6

### 2WD

Rear Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

### 4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

### 4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the

same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

### NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section for further information.

#### WARNING!

**You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.**

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in this section for specific shifting instructions.

The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

**NOTE:** The transfer case NEUTRAL button is located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD and 4LOW) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

#### If All Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

#### If One Or More Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

**NOTE:** Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control switch back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the "Shifting Procedure" for your transfer case, located in this section.

The "SVC 4WD Warning Light" monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

#### **WARNING!**

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD Warning Light" is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll, which may cause personal injury.

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

## Shifting Procedure

### NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control switch back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five seconds and try the shift again.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

### **2WD To 4WD LOCK**

Rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition switch must be in the ON position with the engine either running or off. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

**NOTE:** The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

### **2WD Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW**

**NOTE:** When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. You can use either of the following procedures:

#### **Preferred Procedure**

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

#### **Alternate Procedure**

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

**NOTE:**

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift, then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

**LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL**

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will

supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

**WARNING!**

**On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground since the vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

**POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED (CHASSIS CAB ONLY)**

This vehicle when equipped with PTO Prep and the AS66RC automatic six-speed, will allow for an aftermarket upfit with a transmission driven PTO (power take off). The customer will have the ability to operate the PTO in either a “stationary” or “mobile” mode. The vehicles will be factory set to the “stationary” mode. To select “mobile”



mode, you will need to enter the commercial vehicle menu on the instrument cluster screen and select mobile PTO mode. Details of the PTO selection modes and further PTO information is available at the Ram Truck Bodybuilders web site: [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com).

### AS66RC Six-Speed Automatic Transmission Only

The PTO drive gear (part of the AS66RC) operates at torque converter turbine speed. The turbine speed will be less than engine speed when the torque converter clutch is not engaged and will be same as engine speed when the torque converter clutch is engaged.

### Stationary Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Transmission in PARK position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission.)
- PTO switch has been activated.
- Parking brake applied (vehicles equipped with manual transmission).
- Brake pedal must not be applied.
- Vehicle engine must be running.

- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present.
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits.

The instrument cluster will display a "PTO On" message for five seconds if the above conditions are met. Otherwise, the instrument cluster will display a message "To Operate PTO Shift To Park" indicating what operator action should be taken to engage the PTO mode.

The customer has the choice to operate the PTO by utilizing the cruise control switches or by utilizing a remote control (provided by the PTO supplier). To operate the feature using the cruise control switches, the customer must first activate the PTO switch which will turn on the PTO. In order to increase or decrease the engine idle speed, to optimize the PTO function, the "RESUME/ACCEL" and "DECEL" cruise switches can be used respectively. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply toggle the PTO switch to the OFF position.

The torque converter clutch (TCC) will automatically engage at engine speeds above 1,200 RPM (engine speed) in PTO stationary mode. Once engaged, the TCC will remain applied and will not disengage until the engine speed falls

below 1,000 RPM. TCC engagement is desirable for certain types of PTO applications (Automatic Transmission Only).

To operate the PTO via a remote switch, the customer must make sure the above conditions are met. It is vital for proper operation that the PTO and remote have been installed correctly, paying special attention to ensure the vehicle provided wiring has been connected properly. This is the responsibility of the installer of the PTO and switches/remote system. It is the responsibility of the PTO manufacturer to ensure that their electrical (switches and remote) system is compatible with the vehicle's electrical architecture and software functionality.

**NOTE:** Single set speed can be programmed via the PTO menu on the instrument cluster display. Further details are available at the Ram Truck Bodybuilders web site located at [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com)

### Mobile Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Mobile mode is activated via the menu on the instrument cluster display.

- (ON/OFF) switch has been activated.
- Vehicles with automatic transmission must be in PARK or DRIVE.
- Parking brake must not be applied.
- Brake pedal must not be applied.
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present.
- Vehicle engine must be running.
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits.

The customer may choose to use the PTO while the vehicle is moving. To do so, the PTO function must be activated prior to taking the vehicle out of PARK. This is accomplished by activating the upfitter-provided PTO on/off switch. At this point, the customer may place the vehicle in a forward or reverse gear and have PTO operation once the vehicle begins to move. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply toggle the on/off switch to the OFF position.

**NOTE:** For application specific information with respect to PTO and pump requirements and additional vehicle information (wiring schematics, preset idle values, engine speed limits, and vehicle hardware and software requirements) please refer to the Body Builders Guide by accessing [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com) and choosing the appropriate links.

## POWER STEERING

### Hydraulic Power Steering

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions, you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

### NOTE:

- Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and do not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.
- Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short amount of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering system. This noise should be considered normal, and it does not in any way damage the steering system.

### CAUTION!

**Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and it should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.**

### Power Steering Fluid Check

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Check

fluid level when the engine is cold and off. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

### WARNING!

Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturer's recommended power steering fluid.

### CAUTION!

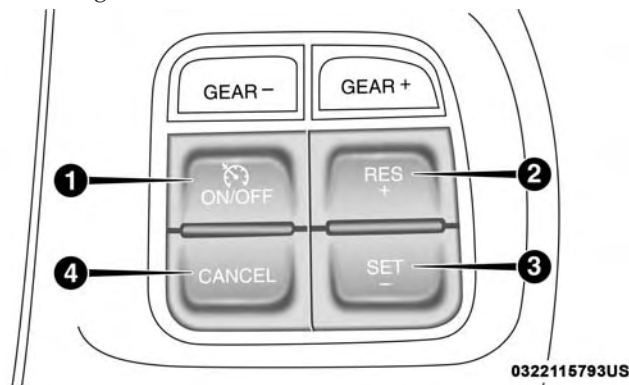
Do not use chemical flushes in your power steering system as the chemicals can damage your power steering components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to "Fluids And Lubricants" in "Technical Specifications" for further information.

## SPEED CONTROL

When engaged, the Speed Control takes over accelerator operations at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The Speed Control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



Speed Control Buttons

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 — ON/OFF  | 3 — SET (-) |
| 2 — RES (+) | 4 — CANCEL  |

**NOTE:** In order to ensure proper operation, the Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple speed control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Speed Control System can be reactivated by pushing the Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

## To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button. The Cruise Indicator Light in the instrument cluster display will illuminate. To turn the system off, push the ON/OFF button a second time. The Cruise Indicator Light will turn off. The system should be turned off when not in use.

### WARNING!

**Leaving the Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.**

## To Set A Desired Speed

Turn the Speed Control on. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

**NOTE:** The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pushing the SET (-) button.

## To Vary The Speed Setting

### To Increase Speed

When the Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing the RES (+) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for more information. The speed decrement shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### To Decrease Speed

When the Speed Control is set, you can decrease speed by pushing the SET (-) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for more information. The speed decrement shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

#### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

#### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### To Accelerate For Passing

Press the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

### Using Speed Control On Hills

The transmission may downshift on hills to maintain the vehicle set speed.

**NOTE:** The Speed Control system maintains speed up and down hills. A slight speed change on moderate hills is normal.

On steep hills, a greater speed loss or gain may occur so it may be preferable to drive without Speed Control.

### **WARNING!**

**Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.**

## To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push the RES (+) button and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

## To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANCEL button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the ON/OFF button, or returning the ignition to OFF, erases the set speed from memory.

## PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED

The ParkSense Rear Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear fascia and a detected obstacle when backing up, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to “ParkSense System Usage Precautions” in this section for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE. If ParkSense is enabled at this gear selector position, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. When in REVERSE and above the system’s operating speed, a warning will appear within the instrument cluster display indicating the vehicle speed is too fast. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

## ParkSense Sensors

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the rear ParkSense sensors are shipped loose. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors’ field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 inches (45 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

## ParkSense Warning Display

The ParkSense Warning screen is located within the instrument cluster display. It provides visual warnings to indicate the distance between the rear fascia/bumper and the detected obstacle. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The ParkSense Warning screen will only be displayed if “Sound and Display” is selected.

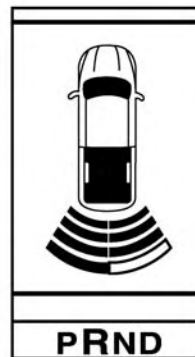
**NOTE:** This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further information.

## ParkSense Display

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the warning display will turn on indicating the system status.

The system will indicate a detected obstacle by showing a single arc in the left and/or right rear regions based on the object’s distance and location relative to the vehicle.

If an object is detected in the left and/or right rear region, the display will show a single solid arc in the left and/or right rear region and the system will produce a tone. As the vehicle moves closer to the object, the display will show the single arc moving closer to the vehicle and the tone will change from a single 1/2 second tone to slow, to fast, to continuous.



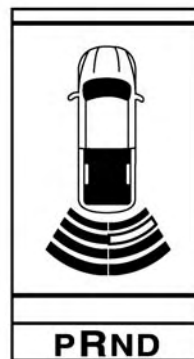
Single 1/2 Second Tone





Slow Tone

032771342



Fast Tone

032771344



032771345

Continuous Tone

The vehicle is close to the obstacle when the warning display shows one flashing arc and sounds a continuous tone. The following chart shows the warning alert operation when the system is detecting an obstacle:

| WARNING ALERTS               |                                    |                              |                             |                            |                                |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Rear Distance<br>(inches/cm) | Greater than<br>79 inches (200 cm) | 79-45 inches<br>(200-115 cm) | 45-31 inches<br>(115-80 cm) | 31-18 inches<br>(80-45 cm) | Less than<br>18 inches (45 cm) |
| Audible Alert<br>Chime       | None                               | Single 1/2<br>Second Tone    | Slow                        | Fast                       | Continuous                     |
| Arc                          | None                               | 4th Solid                    | 3rd<br>Solid                | 2nd<br>Flashing            | 1st<br>Flashing                |
| Radio Volume<br>Reduced      | No                                 | Yes                          | Yes                         | Yes                        | Yes                            |

**NOTE:** ParkSense will reduce the volume of the radio, if on, when the system is sounding an audio tone.

### Adjustable Chime Volume Settings

The rear chime volume settings are programmable.

- The settings may be programmed through the Uconnect System. Refer to “Uconnect Settings ” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### Enabling And Disabling ParkSense

ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense switch.



When the ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the instrument cluster will display the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for approximately five seconds. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

**NOTE:** The ParkSense system will automatically disable when the system detects that a trailer with trailer brakes has been connected to the Integrated Trailer Brake Module. The instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for as long as the vehicle is in reverse.

The ParkSense switch LED will be on when ParkSense is disabled or defective. The ParkSense switch LED will be off when the system is enabled.

If the ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system is disabled or requires service, the ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.

### Service The ParkSense Rear Park Assist System

During vehicle start up, when the ParkSense Rear Park Assist System has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster display will actuate a single chime, once per ignition cycle, and it will show the “PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS” or the “PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED” message. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster display will

show the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE. Under this condition, ParkSense will not operate.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" appears in the instrument cluster display make sure the outer surface and the underside of the rear fascia/bumper is clean and clear of snow, ice, mud, dirt or other obstruction, and then cycle the ignition. If the message continues to appear, see your authorized dealer.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" appears in the instrument cluster display, see your authorized dealer.

### **Cleaning The ParkSense System**

Clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

### **ParkSense System Usage Precautions**

#### **NOTE:**

- Ensure that the rear bumper is free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.
- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you turn ParkSense off, the instrument cluster display will show "PARKSENSE OFF". Furthermore, once you turn ParkSense off, it remains off until you turn it on again, even if you cycle the ignition key.
- When you move the gear selector to the REVERSE position and ParkSense is turned off, the instrument cluster display will show the "PARKSENSE OFF" message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.
- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an

obstacle behind the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the fascia/bumper.

- Ensure the ParkSense system is OFF if objects such as bicycle carriers, trailer hitches, etc., are placed within 18 inches (45 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper while driving the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close obstacle as a sensor problem, causing the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message to appear in the instrument cluster display.
- On vehicles equipped with a tailgate, ParkSense should be disabled when the tailgate is in the lowered or open position and the vehicle is in REVERSE. A lowered tailgate could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

### **WARNING!**

- Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions,

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

- Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

### **CAUTION!**

- ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.

**PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED**

The ParkSense Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear and/or front fascia and a detected obstacle when backing up or moving forward, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to “ParkSense System Usage Precautions” in this section for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE or DRIVE. If ParkSense is enabled at one of these gear selector positions, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph

(11 km/h) or above. A warning will appear in the instrument cluster display indicating the vehicle is above ParkSense operating speed. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

**ParkSense Sensors**

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the rear ParkSense sensors are shipped loose. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors’ field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 inches (45 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

The six ParkSense sensors, located in the front fascia/bumper, monitor the area in front of the vehicle that is within the sensors’ field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 inches (30 cm) up to 47 inches (120 cm) from the front fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

## ParkSense Warning Display

The ParkSense Warning screen is located within the instrument cluster display. It provides visual warnings to indicate the distance between the rear fascia/bumper and/or front fascia/bumper and the detected obstacle. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The ParkSense Warning screen will only be displayed if “Sound and Display” is selected.

**NOTE:** This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” for further information.

## ParkSense Display

The warning display will turn on indicating the system status when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the vehicle is in DRIVE and an obstacle has been detected.

The system will indicate a detected obstacle by showing a single arc in the left and/or right rear regions based on the obstacle’s distance and location relative to the vehicle.

If an obstacle is detected in the left and/or right rear region, the display will show a single arc in the left and/or right rear region and the system will produce a tone. As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the display will show the single arc moving closer to the vehicle and the tone will change from a single 1/2 second tone to slow, to fast, to continuous.

The vehicle is close to the obstacle when the display shows one flashing arc and sounds a continuous tone. The following chart shows the warning alert operation when the system is detecting an obstacle:

| WARNING ALERTS                |                                    |                                              |                             |                            |                                   |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Rear Distance<br>(inches/cm)  | Greater than 79<br>inches (200 cm) | 79-45 inches<br>(200-115 cm)                 | 45-31 inches<br>(115-80 cm) | 31-18 inches<br>(80-45 cm) | Less than 18<br>inches<br>(45 cm) |
| Front Distance<br>(inches/cm) | Greater than 47<br>inches (120 cm) | 47-39 inches<br>(120-100 cm)                 | 39-25 inches<br>(100-65 cm) | 25-12 inches<br>(65-30 cm) | Less than 12<br>inches<br>(30 cm) |
| Audible Alert<br>(Chime)      | None                               | Single 1/2<br>Second Tone (for<br>rear only) | Slow (for rear<br>only)     | Fast                       | Continuous                        |
| Arcs                          | None                               | 4th Solid                                    | 3rd Solid                   | 2nd Flashing               | 1st Flashing                      |
| Radio Volume<br>Reduced       | No                                 | Yes                                          | Yes                         | Yes                        | Yes                               |

**NOTE:** ParkSense will reduce the volume of the radio, if on, when the system is sounding an audio tone.



### Front Park Assist Audible Alerts

ParkSense will turn off the Front Park Assist audible alert (chime) after approximately three seconds when an obstacle has been detected, the vehicle is stationary, and brake pedal is applied.

### Adjustable Chime Volume Settings

The Front and Rear chime volume settings are programmable.

- The settings may be programmed through the Uconnect System. Refer to “Uconnect Settings ” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or Rear ParkSense

Front ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Front ParkSense switch.

Rear ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Rear ParkSense switch.



When the Front or Rear ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for approximately five seconds.

Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the Front or Rear system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the “FRONT PARKSENSE OFF” or “REAR PARKSENSE OFF” message for five seconds, followed by a vehicle graphic with “OFF” in the corresponding side. This vehicle graphic will be displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

**NOTE:** Arc alerts from the enabled ParkSense system, will interrupt the five second messages, and the instrument cluster display will show the vehicle graphic with the corresponding arcs and “OFF” message.

The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be on when Front or Rear ParkSense is disabled or requires service. The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be off when the Front or Rear system is enabled. If the Front or Rear ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system requires service, the Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.

## Service The ParkSense Park Assist System

During vehicle start up, when the ParkSense System has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster will actuate a single chime, once per ignition cycle, and it will display the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS", or the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message for five seconds. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster display will display a "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS" or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" pop up message for five seconds. After five seconds, a vehicle graphic will be displayed with "UNAVAILABLE" at either the front or rear sensor location depending on where the fault is detected. The system will continue to provide arc alerts for the side that is functioning properly. These arc alerts will interrupt the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS", or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" messages if an object is detected within the five second pop-up duration. The vehicle graphic will remain displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

Refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS" appears in the instrument cluster display make sure the outer surface and the underside of the rear fascia/bumper and/or front fascia/bumper is clean and clear of snow, ice, mud, dirt or other obstruction and then cycle the ignition. If the message continues to appear see your authorized dealer.

If the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message appears in the instrument cluster display, see your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning The ParkSense System

Clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

## ParkSense System Usage Precautions

### NOTE:

- Ensure that the front and rear bumper are free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.
- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you turn Front or Rear ParkSense off, the instrument cluster display will read "FRONT PARKSENSE OFF" or "REAR PARKSENSE OFF." Furthermore, once you turn Front or Rear ParkSense off, it remains off until you turn it on again, even if you cycle the ignition key.
- When you move the gear selector to the REVERSE position and Front or Rear ParkSense is turned off, the instrument cluster display will show the "FRONT PARKSENSE OFF" or "REAR PARKSENSE OFF" message for five seconds, followed by a vehicle graphic with "OFF" in the corresponding side. This vehicle graphic will be displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.
- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an obstacle behind or in front of the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind or in front of the fascia/bumper.
- Use the ParkSense switch to turn the ParkSense system off if obstacles such as bicycle carriers, trailer hitches, etc. are placed within 18 inches (45 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close obstacle as a sensor problem, causing the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message to appear in the instrument cluster display.
- On vehicles equipped with a tailgate, ParkSense should be disabled when the tailgate is in the lowered or open position. A lowered tailgate could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.
- Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

- ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.
- The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.

**PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA — IF EQUIPPED**

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see a image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE or whenever it is initiated through the "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu. Whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE, the image will be displayed in the rearview mirror display (if equipped) or

Uconnect screen (if equipped) along with a caution note to “check entire surroundings” across the top of the screen. After five seconds this note will disappear.

**NOTE:** For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the Rear Backup Camera is shipped loose and not installed. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

The ParkView Camera is located to the left of the tailgate handle.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned off), the rear Camera mode is exited and the navigation or audio screen appears again.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned on), the rear Camera image will be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of REVERSE unless the forward vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK or the ignition is switched to the OFF position.

Whenever the Rear View Camera image is activated through the “Backup Camera” button in the “Controls” menu, a display timer for the image is initiated. The image will continue to be displayed until the display timer

exceeds 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) or the touchscreen button “X” to disable display of the Rear View Camera image is pressed.

**NOTE:** If the vehicle speed remains below 8 mph (13 km/h), the Rear View Camera image will be displayed continuously until deactivated via the touchscreen button “X”.

### If Equipped — Cargo Camera Icons:

-  — Backup Camera Touchscreen Button
-  — Cargo Camera Touchscreen Button

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to indicate the current active Camera image being displayed is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to switch the display to Cargo Camera image is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

A touchscreen button “X” to disable display of the camera image is made available when the vehicle is not in REVERSE gear.

When enabled, active guide lines are overlaid on the image to illustrate the width of the vehicle and its projected backup path based on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines will show separate zones that will help indicate the distance to the rear of the vehicle.

**NOTE:** For further information about how to access and change the programmable features of the ParkView Rear Backup Camera, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

The following table shows the approximate distances for each zone:

| Zones  | Distance To The Rear Of The Vehicle |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Red    | 0 - 1 ft (0 - 30 cm)                |
| Yellow | 1 ft - 6.5 ft (30 cm - 2m)          |
| Green  | 6.5 ft or greater (2 m or greater)  |

**WARNING!**

**Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera. Always**

**WARNING! (Continued)**

check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

**CAUTION!**

- To avoid vehicle damage, ParkView should only be used as a parking aid. The ParkView camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkView to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using ParkView.

**NOTE:** If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the camera lens, clean the lens, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lens.

*(Continued)*

### Turning Rear View Camera Image On:

1. Press the "Controls" button located on the bottom of the Uconnect display.
2. Press the "Backup Camera" button  to turn the Rear View Camera system on.

**NOTE:** Once initiated by the "Backup Camera" button, the Rear View Camera image may be deactivated by pressing the "X" button on the touchscreen. On deactivation, the previous selected screen will appear.

### REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS

#### CAUTION!

- Damage to the fuel system or emissions control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (fuel filler cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly-fitted aftermarket cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.
- A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the MIL to turn on.

(Continued)

#### CAUTION! (Continued)

- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

**NOTE:** When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off the fuel tank is full.

#### WARNING!

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.
- Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.

**NOTE:** Tighten the gas cap  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

**WARNING!**

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

**Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message**

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a loose gascap indicator will display in the instrument cluster telltale display area. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and push the RIGHT button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

**Materials Added To Fuel**

Besides using unleaded gasoline with the proper octane rating, gasolines that contain detergents, corrosion and stability additives are recommended. Using gasolines that

have these additives will help improve fuel economy, reduce emissions, and maintain vehicle performance.



Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of TOP TIER Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com) for a list of TOP

TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

**VEHICLE LOADING****Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.



## **Payload**

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

## **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

## **Tire Size**

The tire size on the Vehicle Certification Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

## **Rim Size**

This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

## **Inflation Pressure**

This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

## **Curb Weight**

The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

## **Loading**

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over the front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified

weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

### CAUTION!

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

## TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer, carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

## Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

### Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The GTW is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

**WARNING!**

If the gross trailer weight is 5,000 lbs (2,267 kg) or more, it is recommended to use a weight-distributing hitch to ensure stable handling of your vehicle. If you use a standard weight-carrying hitch, you could lose control of your vehicle and cause a collision.

**Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)**

The GCWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination.

**Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

**WARNING!**

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

**Tongue Weight (TW)**

The tongue weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

**Trailer Frontal Area**

The frontal area is the maximum height multiplied by the maximum width of the front of a trailer.

**Trailer Sway Control**

The trailer sway control can be a mechanical telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

If equipped, the electronic Trailer Sway Control (TSC) recognizes a swaying trailer and automatically applies individual wheel brakes and/or reduces engine power to attempt to eliminate the trailer sway.

## Weight-Carrying Hitch

A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the vehicle. These kinds of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they are commonly used to tow small and medium sized trailers.

## Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturer's directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control, thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction/hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on vehicle and trailer configuration/loading to comply with GAWR requirements.

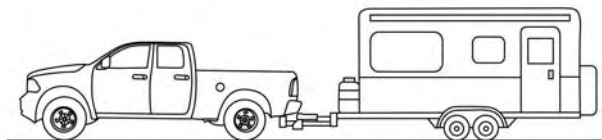
### WARNING!

- An improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch system may reduce handling, stability and braking performance and could result in a collision.
- Weight distributing systems may not be compatible with surge brake couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.

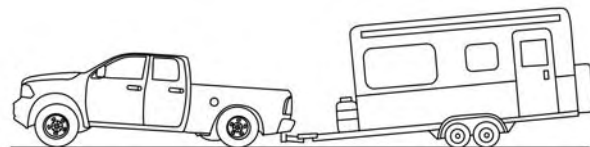


0601115956US

Without Weight-Distributing Hitch (Incorrect)



0601115980US

**With Weight-Distributing Hitch (Correct)**

0601115981US

**Improper Adjustment Of Weight-Distributing Hitch  
(Incorrect)*****Recommended Distribution Hitch Adjustment***

1. Position the truck to be ready to connect to the trailer (do not connect the trailer).
2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H1.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distribution bars connected.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H2.

5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars per the manufacturers’ recommendations so that the height of the front fender is approximately  $(H2-H1)/2+H1$  (about 1/2 the difference between H2 and H1 above normal ride height [H1]).
6. Preform a visual inspection of the trailer and weight distributing hitch to confirm manufacturers’ recommendations have been met.

| Measurement Example | Example 2500/3500 Height (mm) |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| H1                  | 1030                          |
| H2                  | 1058                          |
| H2-H1               | 28                            |
| $(H2-H1)/2$         | 14                            |
| $(H2-H1)/2 + H1$    | 1044                          |

**NOTE:** For all towing conditions, we recommend towing with tow haul mode engaged.

**Fifth-Wheel Hitch**

The fifth-wheel hitch is a special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. It connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

Your truck may be equipped with a 5th wheel hitch option. Refer to the separately provided 5th wheel hitch safety, care, assembly, and operating instructions.

**Gooseneck Hitch**

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

**Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer Weight**

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition.

| Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions |                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Class                                    | Max. Trailer Hitch Industry Standards |
| Class I - Light Duty                     | 2,000 lbs (907 kg)                    |
| Class II - Medium Duty                   | 3,500 lbs (1,587 kg)                  |
| Class III - Heavy Duty                   | 5,000 lbs (2,267 kg)                  |
| Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty              | 10,000 lbs (4,535 kg)                 |

### Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions

|                                                                                                                                                      |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Fifth Wheel/Gooseneck                                                                                                                                | Greater than 10,000 lbs<br>(4,535 kg) |
| Refer to the “Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)” for the Maximum Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) towable for your given drivetrain. |                                       |
| All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.                                                                              |                                       |

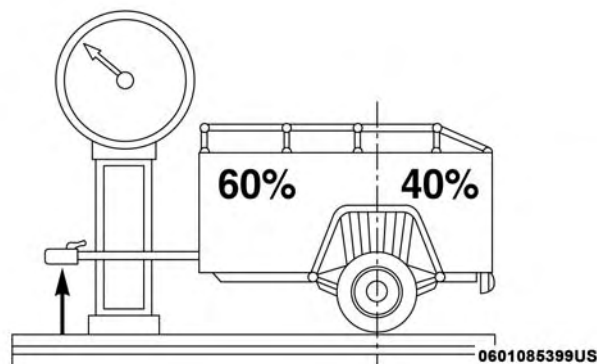
### Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

**NOTE:** For trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- [ramtrucks.com/en/towing\\_guide/](http://ramtrucks.com/en/towing_guide/)
- [ramtruck.ca](http://ramtruck.ca) (Canada)
- [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com)

### Trailer And Tongue Weight

Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your bumper or trailer hitch.



### Weight Distribution

Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer.
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.
- The weight of the driver and all passengers.

**NOTE:** Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options or dealer-installed options must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to the “Tire And Loading Information” placard for the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo for your vehicle.

### Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components, the following guidelines are recommended.

#### CAUTION!

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.

Perform the maintenance listed in the “Scheduled Servicing”. Refer to “Scheduled Servicing” in “Servicing And

Maintenance” for the proper maintenance intervals. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR or GCWR ratings.

#### WARNING!

**Improper towing can lead to a collision. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:**

- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have a collision.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle transmission in PARK. For four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.
- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:
  1. GVWR
  2. GTW
  3. GAWR
  4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized.

**Towing Requirements — Tires**

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h) when towing while using a full size spare tire.

- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for proper tire inflation procedures.
- Check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.
- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires, refer to "Tires" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for the proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limits.

**Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes**

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.

- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (453 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

**WARNING!**

- **Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have a collision.**
- **Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in a collision.**

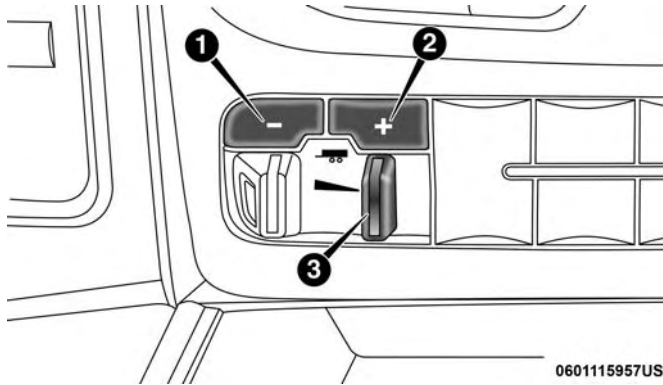
**CAUTION!**

**If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (453 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.**

**Integrated Trailer Brake Module — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM) for Electric and Electric Over Hydraulic (EOH) trailer brakes.

**NOTE:** This module has been designed and verified with electric trailer brakes and new electric over hydraulic systems. Some previous EOH systems may not be compatible with ITBM.



**Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM)**

- 1 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 2 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 3 — Manual Brake Control Lever

The user interface consists of the following:

### **Manual Brake Control Lever**

Slide the manual brake control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes. If the manual brake control lever is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

The trailer and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle braking or manual trailer brakes are applied.

### **Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light**

This light indicates the trailer electrical connection status.

If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pushing the GAIN adjustment button or sliding the manual brake control lever will display the GAIN setting for 10 seconds and the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will not be displayed.

If a fault is detected in the trailer wiring or the Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM), the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will flash.

### **GAIN Adjustment Buttons (+/-)**

Pushing these buttons will adjust the brake control power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking).

### **GAIN**

The GAIN setting is used to set the trailer brake control for the specific towing condition and should be changed as

towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

### Adjusting GAIN

**NOTE:** This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
  2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
  3. When a trailer with electric/EOH brakes is plugged in, the trailer connected message should appear in the instrument cluster display (if the connection is not recognized by the ITBM, braking functions will not be available), the GAIN setting will illuminate and the correct type of trailer must be selected from the instrument cluster display options.
  4. Push the UP or DOWN button on the steering wheel until "TRAILER TOW" appears on the screen.
  5. Push the RIGHT arrow on the steering wheel to enter "TRAILER TOW".
  6. Push the UP or DOWN buttons until the Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
  7. Push the RIGHT arrow and then push the UP or DOWN buttons until the proper Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
  8. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual brake control lever completely.
  9. If the trailer wheels lockup (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting.
- Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lockup. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

|                        | Light Electric          | Heavy Electric          | Light EOH                              | Heavy EOH                              |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Type of Trailer Brakes | Electric Trailer Brakes | Electric Trailer Brakes | Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes | Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes |
| Load                   | *Under 10,000 lbs       | *Above 10,000 lbs       | *Under 10,000 lbs                      | *Above 10,000 lbs                      |

\* The suggested selection depends and may change depending on the customer preferences for braking performance. Condition of the trailer brakes, driving and road state may also affect the selection.

### Display Messages

The trailer brake control interacts with the instrument cluster display. Display messages, along with a single chime, will be displayed when a malfunction is determined in the trailer connection, trailer brake control, or on the trailer. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

#### **WARNING!**

**Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury.**

#### **CAUTION!**

**Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in damage to your vehicle, trailer, or other property.**

#### **NOTE:**

- An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with air or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on your trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.
- Removal of the ITBM will cause errors and it may cause damage to the electrical system and electronic modules of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer if an aftermarket module is to be installed.

## Towing Requirements — Trailer Lights And Wiring

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stoplights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

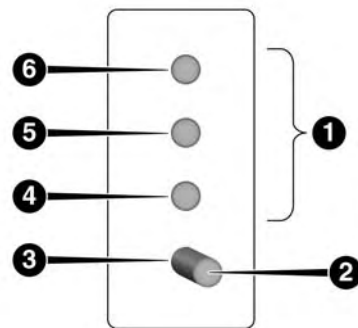
The Trailer Tow Package may include a four- and seven-pin wiring harness. Use a factory approved trailer harness and connector.

**NOTE:** Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicle's wiring harness.

The electrical connections are all complete to the vehicle but you must mate the harness to a trailer connector. Refer to the following illustrations.

**NOTE:**

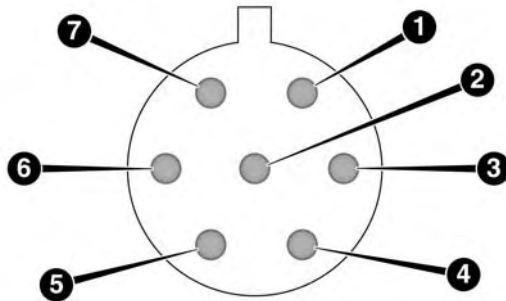
- Disconnect trailer wiring connector from the vehicle before launching a boat (or any other device plugged into vehicle's electrical connect) into water.
- Be sure to reconnect after clear from water area.



0601085400US

**Four-Pin Connector**

- |                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1 — Female Pins | 4 — Park            |
| 2 — Male Pin    | 5 — Left Stop/Turn  |
| 3 — Ground      | 6 — Right Stop/Turn |



0601085401US

### Seven-Pin Connector

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 — Battery         | 5 — Ground         |
| 2 — Backup Lamps    | 6 — Left Stop/Turn |
| 3 — Right Stop/Turn | 7 — Running Lamps  |
| 4 — Electric Brakes |                    |

### Towing Tips

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping, and backing up the trailer in an area located away from heavy traffic.

### Automatic Transmission

The DRIVE range can be selected when towing. The transmission controls include a drive strategy to avoid frequent shifting when towing. However, if frequent shifting does occur while in DRIVE, select TOW/HAUL mode or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control).

**NOTE:** Using TOW/HAUL mode or selecting a lower gear range (using the ERS shift control) while operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

When towing a loaded trailer up steep grades at low speeds (20 mph [32 km/h] or below), holding your vehicle in first gear (using the ERS shift control) can help to avoid transmission overheating.

If you regularly tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation, then change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) as specified for "police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing." Refer to the "Maintenance Plan" for the proper maintenance intervals.

**NOTE:** Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

### **Tow/Haul Mode**

To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, activate TOW/HAUL mode when driving in hilly areas, or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control) on more severe grades.

### **Speed Control — If Equipped**

- Do not use on hilly terrain or with heavy loads.
- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

### **Cooling System**

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

### **City Driving**

- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase engine idle speed.

### **Highway Driving**

- Reduce speed.
- Temporarily turn off air conditioning.

### **Air Suspension System**

To aid in attaching/detaching the trailer from the vehicle, the air suspension system can be used. Refer to “Air Suspension System” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

**NOTE:** The vehicle must remain in the engine running position while attaching a trailer for proper leveling of the air suspension system.

### **SNOWPLOW**

#### **2500/3500 Models Only**

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.



**NOTE:** Before installation of a snowplow it is highly recommended that the owner/installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current Body Builders Guide. See your authorized dealer, installer or snowplow manufacturer for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety and prevent overloading vehicle systems.

### **WARNING!**

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in a collision. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual.

### **CAUTION!**

The "Lamp Out" indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

### **Before Plowing**

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.
- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  in (6 cm to 1.2 cm) above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

### **Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability**

For Information about snowplow applications visit [www.ramtrucks.com](http://www.ramtrucks.com) or refer to the current Body Builders Guide.

1. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.
2. The total GVWR or the Front GAWR or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.
3. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

**NOTE:** Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end toe-in should be checked and reset if necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

### **Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached**

The blade restricts air flow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

### **Operating Tips**

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km/h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

### **General Maintenance**

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4LO when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km/h). At higher speeds operate in 4HI.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions should use 4LO range when plowing deep or heavy snow for extended periods of time to avoid transmission overheating.
- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal while shifting the transmission.

**RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)****Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle**

| Towing Condition | Wheels OFF<br>The Ground | Two-Wheel<br>Drive Models | Four-Wheel Drive Models                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flat Tow         | NONE                     | <b>NOT AL-<br/>LOWED</b>  | <b>See Instructions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission in PARK</li> <li>• Manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL)</li> <li>• Transfer case in NEUTRAL (N)</li> <li>• Tow in forward direction</li> </ul> |
| Dolly Tow        | Front                    | <b>NOT AL-<br/>LOWED</b>  | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Rear                     | OK                        | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| On Trailer       | ALL                      | OK                        | OK                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**NOTE:**

- When towing your vehicle, always follow applicable state and provincial laws. Contact state and provincial Highway Safety offices for additional details.

## Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models

**DO NOT** flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.

Recreational towing (for two-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the rear wheels are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. Place automatic transmission in PARK, manual transmission in gear (not in NEUTRAL).
4. Properly secure the rear wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
5. Turn the ignition OFF and remove the key fob.
6. Install a suitable clamping device, designed for towing, to secure the front wheels in the straight position.

### CAUTION!

- Towing with the rear wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not disconnect the driveshaft because fluid may leak from the transmission, causing damage to internal parts.

## Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models

**NOTE:** Both the manual shift and electronic shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL) for recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL (N) shifting procedure for your vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- **DO NOT** dolly tow any 4WD vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or transfer case

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).

- Tow only in the forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the transfer case.
- Before recreational towing, the transfer case must be in NEUTRAL. To be certain the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL, perform the procedure outlined under "Shifting Into NEUTRAL". Internal transmission damage will result, if the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL during towing.
- Automatic transmissions must be placed in PARK, and manual transmissions must be placed in gear (not in Neutral) for recreational towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case, causing damage to internal parts.
- Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.

**Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

**WARNING!**

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission is in PARK (or manual transmission is in gear). The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop on level ground, with the engine running. Firmly apply the parking brake.
  2. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
  3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
  4. Depress the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.
  5. Shift the transfer case into NEUTRAL:
    - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL (N).
    - With electronic shift transfer case, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button. Some models have a small, recessed "N" button (at the center of the transfer case switches) that must be pressed using a ballpoint pen or similar object. Other models have a rectangular NEUTRAL switch, below the rotary transfer case control knob. The NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will blink while the shift is in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.
  6. Release the parking brake.
  7. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
  8. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions) for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
  9. Repeat steps seven and eight with automatic transmission in DRIVE or manual transmission in first gear.
  10. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL. Firmly apply the parking brake. Turn OFF the engine. For vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go, push and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button until the engine shuts off.
  11. Shift the transmission into PARK or place manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL).
  12. Place the ignition in the OFF mode, and remove the key fob.
  13. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.
  14. Release the parking brake.
- NOTE:** With electronic shift transfer case:
- Steps 2 through 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If

any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.

- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

### Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.

5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.

- With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever to the desired position.
- With electronic shift transfer case with rotary selector switch, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off. After the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button. After the NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.
- With electronic shift transfer case with push-button selector switch, push and hold the switch for the desired transfer case position, until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off and the desired position indicator light turns on.

**NOTE:** When shifting out of transfer case NEUTRAL (N), the engine should remain OFF to avoid gear clash.

6. Shift automatic transmission into PARK.
7. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on a manual transmission).
8. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.

9. Start the engine.
10. Press and hold the brake pedal.
11. Release the parking brake.
12. Shift the transmission into gear, release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions), and check that the vehicle operates normally.

**NOTE:** With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 3 and 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the button to shift out of NEUTRAL (N), and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

## DRIVING TIPS

### Driving On Slippery Surfaces

#### Acceleration

Rapid acceleration on snow covered, wet, or other slippery surfaces may cause the driving wheels to pull erratically to the right or left. This phenomenon occurs when there is a difference in the surface traction under the rear (driving) wheels.

#### WARNING!

**Rapid acceleration on slippery surfaces is dangerous. Unequal traction can cause sudden pulling of the rear wheels. You could lose control of the vehicle and possibly have a collision. Accelerate slowly and carefully whenever there is likely to be poor traction (ice, snow, wet, mud, loose sand, etc.).**

### Driving Through Water

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.



## Flowing/Rising Water

### WARNING!

Do not drive on or across a road or path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

## Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Cautions and Warnings before doing so.

### WARNING!

- Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.
- Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.
- Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

**CAUTION!**

- Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.
- Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.
- Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.
- Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

# IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

## CONTENTS

|                                                     |     |                                                      |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS . . . . .                 | 322 | ■ JUMP STARTING . . . . .                            | 347 |
| ■ ASSIST AND SOS MIRROR — IF EQUIPPED . . .         | 322 | □ Preparations For Jump Start . . . . .              | 348 |
| ■ BULB REPLACEMENT . . . . .                        | 327 | □ Jump Starting Procedure . . . . .                  | 349 |
| □ Replacement Bulbs . . . . .                       | 327 | ■ IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS . . . . .                 | 350 |
| □ Replacing Exterior Bulbs . . . . .                | 328 | ■ GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE . . . . .                   | 351 |
| ■ FUSES . . . . .                                   | 333 | ■ FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE . . . . .                  | 352 |
| □ Power Distribution Center . . . . .               | 334 | ■ TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE . . . . .                | 354 |
| ■ JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING . . . . .               | 341 | □ Two-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .                   | 355 |
| □ 4500/5500 Models . . . . .                        | 341 | □ Four-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .                  | 356 |
| □ Preparations For Jacking . . . . .                | 341 | □ Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped . . . . .        | 356 |
| □ Jacking Instructions 4500 And 5500 Series . . . . | 342 | ■ ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS) . . . . . | 357 |
| □ To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped . . . .   | 346 | ■ EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR) . . . . .                | 357 |
| □ Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped . . . .       | 346 |                                                      |     |

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the upper switch bank just below the radio.



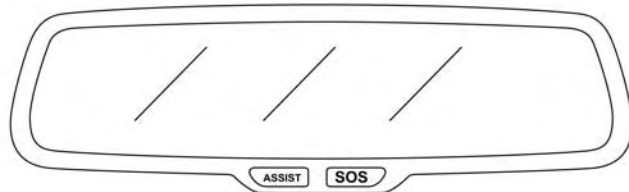
Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

**NOTE:** With extended use the Hazard Warning flashers may wear down your battery.

## ASSIST AND SOS MIRROR — IF EQUIPPED



0306114048US

### Assist And SOS Mirror

If equipped, the rearview mirror contains an ASSIST and a SOS button.

### WARNING!

**ALWAYS** obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. **ALWAYS** drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect and

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**SiriusXM Guardian features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.**

**NOTE:**

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- The SOS and ASSIST buttons will only function if you are connected to an operable LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) network. Other Uconnect services will only be operable if your SiriusXM Guardian service is active and you are connected to an operable LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) network.

**ASSIST Call**

The ASSIST Button is used to automatically connect you to any one of the following support centers:

- Roadside Assistance – If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, just push the ASSIST button and you'll be connected to

someone who can help. Roadside Assistance will know what vehicle you're driving and its location. Additional fees may apply for roadside Assistance.

- SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care – In-vehicle support for SiriusXM Guardian.
- Vehicle Customer Care – Total support for all other vehicle issues.

**SOS Call**

1. Push the SOS Call button on the Rearview Mirror.

**NOTE:** In case the SOS Call button is pushed in error, there will be a ten second delay before the SOS Call system initiates a call to a SOS operator. To cancel the SOS Call connection, push the SOS call button on the Rearview Mirror or press the cancellation button on the Device Screen. Termination of the SOS Call will turn off the green LED light on the Rearview Mirror.

2. The LED light located between the ASSIST and SOS buttons on the Rearview Mirror will turn green once a connection to a SOS operator has been made.

3. Once a connection between the vehicle and a SOS operator is made, the SOS Call system may transmit the following important vehicle information to a SOS operator:
  - Indication that the occupant placed a SOS Call.
  - The vehicle brand.
  - The last known GPS coordinates of the vehicle.
4. You should be able to speak with the SOS operator through the vehicle audio system to determine if additional help is needed.

**WARNING!**

**ALWAYS** obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. **ALWAYS** drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect and SiriusXM Guardian features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

**NOTE:**

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
  - Once a connection is made between the vehicle's SOS Call system and the SOS operator, the SOS operator may be able to open a voice connection with the vehicle to determine if additional help is needed. Once the SOS operator opens a voice connection with the vehicle's SOS Call system, the operator should be able to speak with you or other vehicle occupants and hear sounds occurring in the vehicle. The vehicle's SOS Call system will attempt to remain connected with the SOS operator until the SOS operator terminates the connection.
5. The SOS operator may attempt to contact appropriate emergency responders and provide them with important vehicle information and GPS coordinates.

**WARNING!**

- If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from an

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

Emergency Services Agent. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.

- Never place anything on or near the vehicle's operable network and GPS antennas. You could prevent operable network and GPS signal reception, which can prevent your vehicle from placing an emergency call. An operable network and GPS signal reception is required for the SOS Call system to function properly.
- The SOS Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the SOS Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas on your vehicle. **IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), THE UCONNECT FEATURES, APPS AND SERVICES, AMONG OTHERS, WILL NOT OPERATE.**

(Continued)

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Modifications to any part of the SOS Call system could cause the air bag system to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to help protect you.

**SOS Call System Limitations**

Vehicles sold in Mexico **DO NOT** have SOS Call system capabilities.

SOS or other emergency line operators in Mexico may not answer or respond to SOS system calls.

If the SOS Call system detects a malfunction, any of the following may occur at the time the malfunction is detected, and at the beginning of each ignition cycle:

- The Rearview Mirror light located between the ASSIST and SOS buttons will continuously be illuminated red.
- The Device Screen will display the following message "Vehicle device requires service. Please contact your dealer."
- An In-Vehicle Audio message will state "Vehicle device requires service. Please contact your dealer."

**WARNING!**

- Ignoring the Rearview Mirror light could mean you will not have SOS Call services. If the Rearview Mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the SOS Call system immediately.
- The Occupant Restraint Control module turns on the air bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction in any part of the system is detected. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the Occupant Restraint Control system immediately.

Even if the SOS Call system is fully functional, factors beyond FCA US LLC's control may prevent or stop the SOS Call system operation. These include, but are not limited to, the following factors:

- Delayed accessories mode is active.
- The ignition is in the OFF position.
- The vehicle's electrical systems are not intact.
- The SOS Call system software and/or hardware are damaged during a crash.
- The vehicle battery loses power or becomes disconnected during a vehicle crash.

- LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) network and/or Global Positioning Satellite signals are unavailable or obstructed.
- Equipment malfunction at the SOS operator facility.
- Operator error by the SOS operator.
- LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) network congestion.
- Weather.
- Buildings, structures, geographic terrain, or tunnels.

**WARNING!**

**ALWAYS** obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. **ALWAYS** drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect and SiriusXM Guardian features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.



**NOTE:**

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- Never place anything on or near the vehicle's LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) and GPS antennas. You could prevent LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) and GPS signal reception, which can prevent your vehicle from placing an emergency call. An operable LTE (voice/data) or 4G (data) network connection and a GPS signal is required for the SOS Call system to function properly.

**General Information**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**CAUTION!**

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

**BULB REPLACEMENT****Replacement Bulbs****LIGHT BULBS — Interior**

|                                                                                | Bulb Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Overhead Console Lamps                                                         | TS 212-2    |
| Dome Lamp                                                                      | 7679        |
| For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions. |             |

**LIGHT BULBS — Exterior**

|                                           | <b>Bulb Number</b>                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Quad Headlamp – Low Beam                  | H11                                     |
| Quad Headlamp – High Beam                 | 9005                                    |
| Quad Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp    | 3157NA                                  |
| Premium Headlamp – Low Beam               | HIR2                                    |
| Premium Headlamp – High Beam              | 9005                                    |
| Premium Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp | LED (See authorized dealer for service) |
| Horizontal Fog Lamp                       | 9145                                    |
| Vertical Fog Lamp                         | 9006                                    |
| Cab Roof Marker Lamps                     | 194NA                                   |
| Center High Mounted Stop Lamp             | 921                                     |

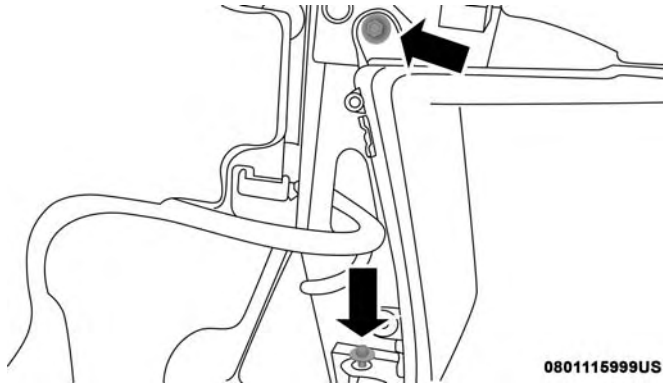
|                                                   | <b>Bulb Number</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Rear Cargo Lamp                                   | 921                |
| Box Off Tail Lamps – Stop/Turn/Tail/License Plate | 1157               |
| Box Off Tail Lamps – Back Up                      | 1156               |

**Replacing Exterior Bulbs**

**Base Quad / Premium Bi-Halogen: Low Beam Headlamp, High Beam Headlamp, Front Park And Turn — If Equipped**

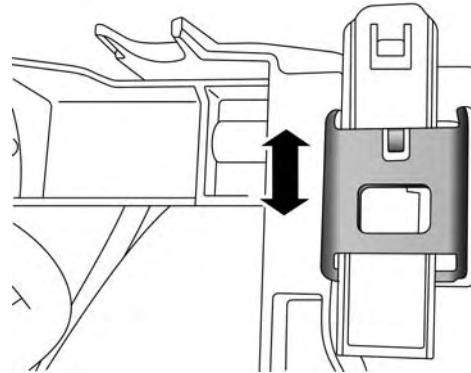
1. Open the hood.
2. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the six plastic push-in fasteners that secure the upper radiator seal to the grille support and both fender ledges.
4. Remove the two plastic push-in rivets that secure the upper radiator seal to the radiator.
5. Remove the upper radiator seal from the vehicle.

6. Remove the two headlamp assembly attachment screws.



#### Headlamp Assembly Attachment Screw Locations

7. Reach into the front wheel house ahead of the front wheel, remove the fastener, and lift the cover over the access hole in the front of the wheel house splash shield. Access to the rear of the lamp can be gained through this access hole.
8. Reach through the access hole of the wheel house splash shield and lift the slide lock upward far enough to disengage it from the lock post on the back of the front lamp unit housing.



0801116012US

7

#### Slide Lock

9. Remove the headlamp assembly. Grasp the outboard edge of the lamp and pull it straight forward to disengage the ball stud from the plastic grommet.
10. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors from the bulb socket.
11. Replace bulb(s) as necessary.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.
- Always use the correct bulb size and type for replacement. An incorrect bulb size or type may overheat and cause damage to the lamp, the bulb socket, or the lamp wiring.

**NOTE:** There are access covers over both headlamp bulb access holes in the quad front lamp unit housing (if equipped). These covers **MUST** be reinstalled after the bulb has been replaced.

**Fog Lamps — If Equipped**

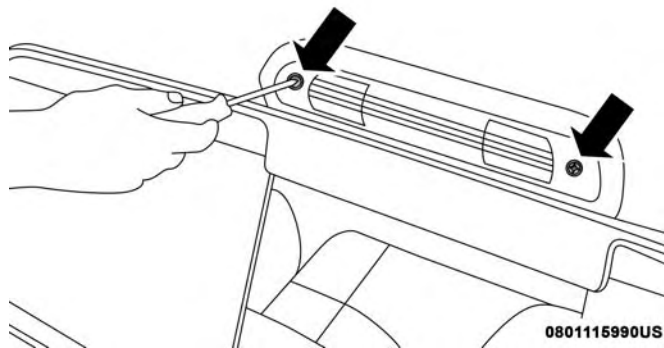
1. Reach under and behind the front bumper to access the back of the front fog lamp housing.
2. Disconnect the fog lamp wiring harness connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Rotate the bulb counterclockwise  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn to unlock the bulb from the housing.
4. Pull the bulb straight out from the housing.

**CAUTION!**

Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

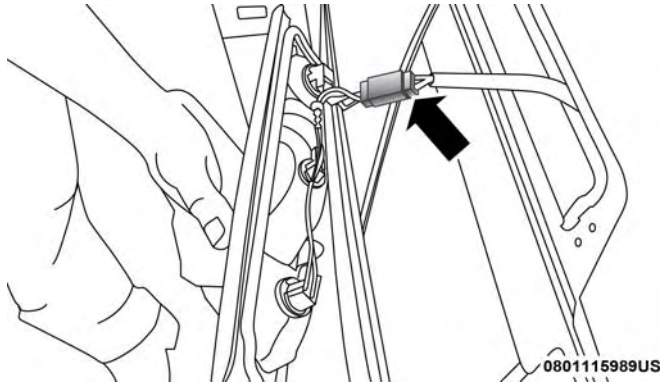
**Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) With Cargo Lamp**

1. Remove the two screws holding the housing/lens to the body as shown.



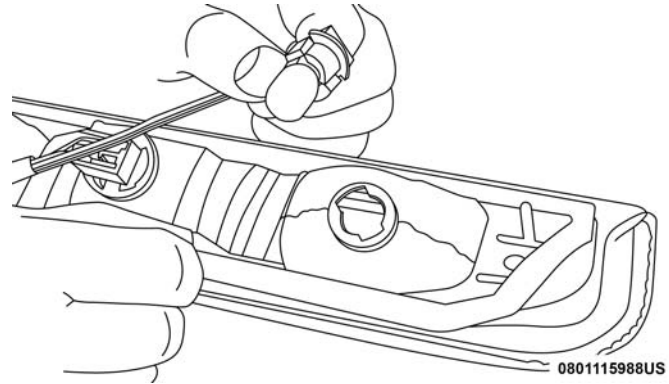
**CHMSL Mounting Screw Locations**

2. Separate the connector holding the housing and wiring harness to the body.



**CHMSL Connector Location**

3. Turn the desired bulb socket  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn and remove the socket and bulb from housing.
4. Pull the desired bulb straight from the socket.



**CHMSL Bulb And Socket**

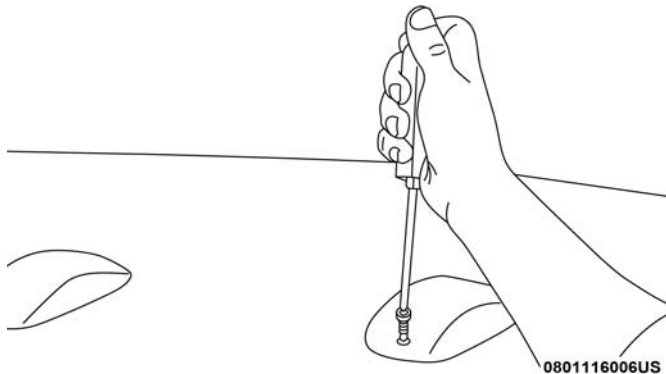
### **CAUTION!**

**Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.**

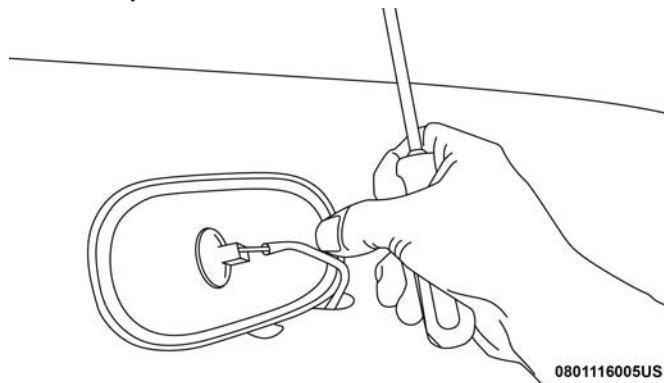
- Outside Bulbs: Cargo Lamps
  - Inside Bulb: Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp
5. Reverse the procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

**Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped**

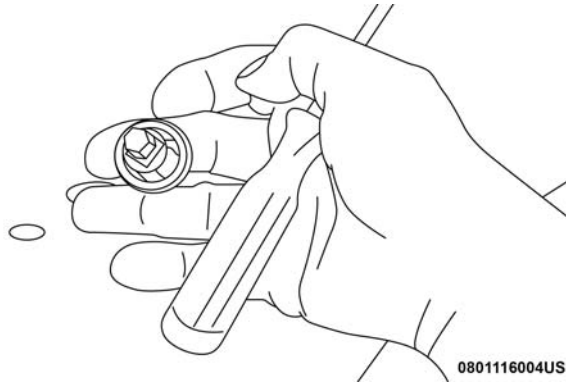
1. Remove the two screws from the top of the lamp.

**Removing Rear Screw From Clearance Lamp**

2. Rotate the bulb socket  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn and pull it from the lamp assembly.

**Removing Bulb Socket From Clearance Lamp**

3. Pull the bulb straight from it's socket and replace.



Removing The Bulb From The Bulb Socket

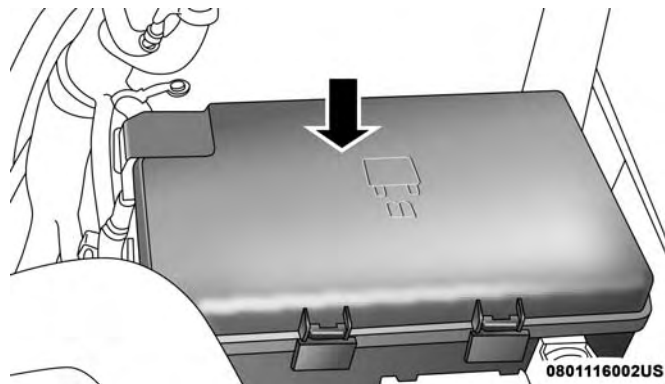
## FUSES

### WARNING!

- When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Do not place a fuse inside a circuit breaker cavity or vice versa. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.
- Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.
- If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.

## Power Distribution Center

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, micro fuses, relays, and circuit breakers. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



Power Distribution Center Location

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse | Description                                       |
|--------|----------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| F01    | 80 Amp Black   | –          | Rad Fan Control Module – If Equipped              |
| F03    | 60 Amp Yellow  | –          | Rad Fan – If Equipped                             |
| F05    | 40 Amp Green   | –          | Compressor for Air Suspension – If Equipped       |
| F06    | 40 Amp Green   | –          | Antilock Brakes/Electronic Stability Control Pump |
| F07    | 40 Amp Green   | –          | Starter Solenoid                                  |



| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse                                               | Micro Fuse | Description                                                          |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F08    | 20 Amp Blue (1500 LD/Cummins Diesel)                         | –          | Emissions Diesel – If Equipped                                       |
| F09    | 40 Amp Green (Special Services Vehicle & Cummins Diesel)     | –          | Diesel Fuel Heater – If Equipped                                     |
| F10    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2                               |
| F10    | 50 Amp Red                                                   | –          | Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2 – If Equipped with Stop/Start |
| F11    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Integrated Trailer Brake Module – If Equipped                        |
| F12    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller #3 / Power Locks                                     |
| F13    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Blower Motor                                                         |
| F14    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller #4 / Interior Lighting                               |
| F16    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Smart Bar – If Equipped                                              |
| F19    | 20 Amp Blue (1500 LD Diesel)<br>30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel) | –          | SCR – If Equipped                                                    |
| F20    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Passenger Door Module                                                |
| F21    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Drive Train Control Module                                           |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse                              | Micro Fuse | Description                                         |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| F22    | 20 Amp Blue<br>30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel) | –          | Engine Control Module                               |
| F23    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Body Controller #1 / Interior Lighting              |
| F24    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Driver Door Module                                  |
| F25    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Front Wiper                                         |
| F26    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Antilock Brakes / Stability Control Module / Valves |
| F28    | 20 Amp Blue                                 | –          | Trailer Tow Backup Lights – If Equipped             |
| F29    | 20 Amp Blue                                 | –          | Trailer Tow Parking Lights – If Equipped            |
| F30    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Trailer Tow Receptacle                              |
| F31    | 30 Amp Pink (1500 LD Diesel)                | –          | Urea Heater Control – If Equipped                   |
| F32    | –                                           | –          | Spare Fuse                                          |
| F33    | 20 Amp Blue                                 | –          | Special Services Vehicle Only                       |
| F34    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Vehicle System Interface Module #2 – If Equipped    |
| F35    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Sunroof – If Equipped                               |
| F36    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Rear Defroster – If Equipped                        |
| F37    | 30 Amp Pink                                 | –          | Cummins Diesel Fuel Heater #2 – If Equipped         |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse    | Description                                                                              |
|--------|----------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F38    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Power Inverter 115V AC – If Equipped                                                     |
| F39    | 20 Amp Blue    | –             | Power Outlet – Special Services Only                                                     |
| F41    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Active Grille Shutter – If Equipped                                                      |
| F42    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Horn                                                                                     |
| F44    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Diagnostic Port                                                                          |
| F46    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Upfitter – If Equipped                                                                   |
| F49    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Instrument Panel Cluster (Except Fleet Vehicles)                                         |
| F50    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Air Suspension Control Module – If Equipped                                              |
| F51    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Ignition Node Module / Keyless Ignition (Instrument Panel Cluster – Fleet Vehicles Only) |
| F52    | –              | 5 Amp Tan     | Battery Sensor                                                                           |
| F53    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Trailer Tow – Left Turn/Stop Lights                                                      |
| F54    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Adjustable Pedals                                                                        |
| F56    | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Additional Diesel Content – If Equipped                                                  |
| F57    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Transmission                                                                             |
| F58    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Spare Fuse                                                                               |
| F59    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | SCR Relay – If Equipped                                                                  |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse                                   | Description                                          |
|--------|----------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| F60    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                  | Underhood Lamp                                       |
| F61    | –              | 10 Amp Red (1500 LD Diesel & Cummins Diesel) | PM Sensor – If Equipped                              |
| F62    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                   | Air Conditioning Clutch                              |
| F63    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                                | Ignition Coils (Gas), Urea Heater (Cummins Diesel)   |
| F64    | –              | 25 Amp Clear                                 | Fuel Injectors / Powertrain                          |
| F65    | –              | –                                            | Spare Fuse                                           |
| F66    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                   | Sunroof / Passenger Window Switches / Rain Sensor    |
| F67    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                   | CD / DVD / Bluetooth Hands-free Module – If Equipped |
| F69    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                  | Mod SCR 12V (Cummins Diesel) – If Equipped           |
| F70    | –              | 30 Amp Green                                 | Fuel Pump Motor                                      |
| F71    | –              | 25 Amp Clear                                 | Amplifier                                            |
| F72    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                   | PCM – If Equipped                                    |
| F73    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                                | Fuel Transfer Pump (HD Only) – If Equipped           |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse                                  | Description                                                                 |
|--------|----------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F74    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow (Gas Engine & 1500 LD Diesel) | Brake Vacuum Pump Gas/Diesel – If Equipped                                  |
| F75    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Coolant Temperature Valve Actuator                                          |
| F76    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Antilock Brakes / Electronic Stability Control                              |
| F77    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Drivetrain Control Module/Front Axle Disconnect Module                      |
| F78    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Engine Control Module / Electric Power Steering                             |
| F79    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                 | Clearance Lights                                                            |
| F80    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Universal Garage Door Opener / Compass                                      |
| F81    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                               | Trailer Tow Right Turn / Stop Lights                                        |
| F82    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Steering Column Control Module / Cruise Control                             |
| F84    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                 | Switch Bank / Instrument Cluster                                            |
| F85    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Airbag Module                                                               |
| F86    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Airbag Module                                                               |
| F87    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                  | Air Suspension – If Equipped / Trailer Tow / Steering Column Control Module |
| F88    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                 | Instrument Panel Cluster                                                    |

| Cavity  | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse    | Description                                                 |
|---------|----------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| F90/F91 | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlet (Rear Seats) Customer Selectable               |
| F93     | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Cigar Lighter                                               |
| F94     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Shifter / Transfer Case Module                              |
| F95     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Rear Camera / Park Assist                                   |
| F96     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Rear Seat Heater Switch                                     |
| F97     | –              | 25 Amp Clear  | Rear Heated Seats & Heated Steering Wheel<br>– If Equipped  |
| F98     | –              | 25 Amp Clear  | Front Heated Seats – If Equipped                            |
| F99     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Climate Control                                             |
| F100    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Upfitters – If Equipped                                     |
| F101    | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Electrochromatic Mirror / Smart High Beams<br>– If Equipped |
| F104    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlets (Instrument Panel / Center Console)           |

**CAUTION!**

- When installing the power distribution center cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the power distribution center and possibly result in an electrical system failure.
- When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.
  - The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

**JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING****WARNING!**

- Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
- Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You

**4500/5500 Models**

These vehicles do not come equipped with a jack.

**NOTE:** Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment, like a tire service company.

**Preparations For Jacking**

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

(Continued)

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Place the gear selector into PARK. On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.
3. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
4. Apply the parking brake.
5. Turn the ignition OFF.
6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.



**NOTE:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

**Jacking Instructions 4500 And 5500 Series****WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

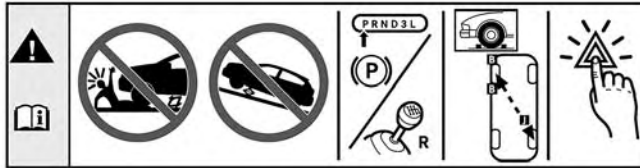
- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
- Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Apply the parking brake firmly and set the transmission in PARK.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.
- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.
- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.



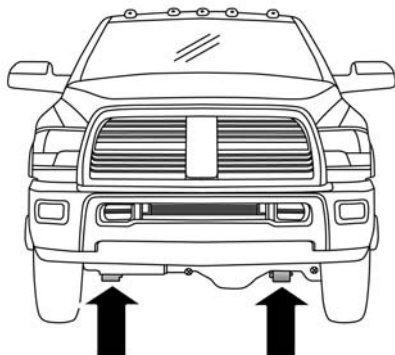
060600714

Jack Warning Label

**CAUTION!**

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

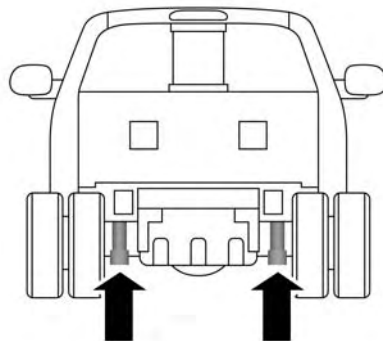
1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the lug wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the jack driver extending to the front. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



0705115875US

### Front Jacking Locations

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tubes. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tires are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



0705117893US

### Rear Jacking Location

**Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.**

**NOTE:** If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the lug wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

**WARNING!**

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the lug nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and lug nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.
6. Using the lug wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. For the proper lug nut torque specifications refer to "Wheel And Tire Torque Specifications" in "Technical Specifications." If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by an authorized dealer or at a service station.

**WARNING!**

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop, could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.
8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.
9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

7

**Dual Rear Wheels**

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

**NOTE:** When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. The correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

### Wheel Nuts

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All wheel nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The wheel nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the wheel nuts to final torque in

increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the wheel nut opposite to the wheel nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved.

### To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped

Refer to Upfitters Body Builders Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (if equipped).

### Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

#### CAUTION!

**Use extreme caution when removing the front and rear center caps. Damage can occur to the center cap and/or the wheel if screwdriver type tools are used. A pulling motion, not a pry off motion, is recommended to remove the caps.**

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pull off notch and carefully pull the hub cap off with a back and forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a

hook at one end that will fit in the pull off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull straight out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

### CAUTION!

- Use a pulling motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.
- The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pull off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pull off the wheel skins. Locate the hub cap pull notches (2 notches on each cap). Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lug nut

bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

### JUMP STARTING

If your vehicle has a discharged battery, it can be jump started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle, or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump starting can be dangerous if done improperly, so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

### WARNING!

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

### CAUTION!

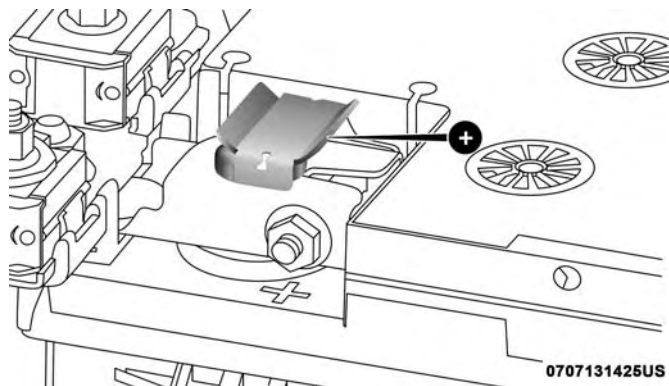
Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

**NOTE:** When using a portable battery booster pack, follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

## Preparations For Jump Start

The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.

**NOTE:** The positive battery post may be covered with a protective cap if equipped. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post. Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post which has a positive (+) symbol on or around the post.



**Positive Jumping Location**

## WARNING!

- Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.
- Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.
- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.

1. Apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition OFF.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.
3. If using another vehicle to jump start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, apply the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

**WARNING!**

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

**Jump Starting Procedure****WARNING!**

Failure to follow this jump starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

**Connecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.

**NOTE:** Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

**WARNING!**

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

**CAUTION!**

Do not connect jumper cable to any of the fuses on the positive battery terminal. The resulting electrical current will blow the fuse.

6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

**Disconnecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Disconnect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and charging system inspected at an authorized dealer.

**CAUTION!**

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular devices, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

**IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS**

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase the engine idle speed while preventing vehicle motion with the brakes.

**NOTE:** There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheat condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.



- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

### **WARNING!**

**You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.**

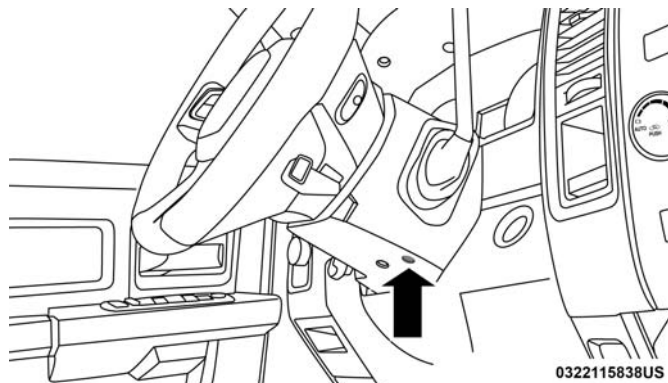
### **CAUTION!**

**Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.**

## **GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE**

If a malfunction occurs and the gear selector cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use the following procedure to temporarily move the gear selector:

1. Turn the engine OFF.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Tilt the steering wheel to the full up position.
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the access port (ringed circle) on the bottom of the steering column, and push and hold the override release lever up.



**Gear Selector Override Access Port**

6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

## **FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE**

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand, or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Next, shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE (with automatic transmission) or SECOND GEAR and REVERSE (with manual transmission) while gently pressing the accelerator. Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion, without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

**NOTE:** Push the "ESC Off" switch, to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Safety" for further information. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode.

**WARNING!**

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

**CAUTION!**

- Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in **NEUTRAL** for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of clutch or transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.
- When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by shifting between **DRIVE/SECOND GEAR** and **REVERSE**, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.
- Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).

## TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled vehicles may also be towed as described under “Recreational Towing” in the “Starting And Operating” section.

| Towing Condition        | Wheels OFF The Ground | 2WD Models                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 4WD Models                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flat Tow                | NONE                  | <b>If transmission is operable:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmission in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• 30 mph (48 km/h) <b>max speed</b></li> <li>• 15 miles (24 km) <b>max distance</b></li> </ul> | <b>See instructions in “Recreational Towing” under “Starting And Operating”</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li> <li>• Manual Transmission in gear ( <b>NOT NEUTRAL</b>)</li> <li>• Transfer Case in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li> </ul> |
| Wheel Lift Or Dolly Tow | Front                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                         | Rear                  | <b>OK</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Flatbed                 | <b>ALL</b>            | <b>BEST METHOD</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>BEST METHOD</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode, not the ACC mode.

If the key fob is unavailable or the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to "Gear Selector Override" in this section for instructions on shifting the automatic transmission out of PARK for towing.

### CAUTION!

- Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.
- When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.

### Two-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transmission is operable, the vehicle may be towed (with the rear wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- The transmission must be in NEUTRAL.
- The towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- The towing distance must not exceed 15 miles (24 km).

If the transmission is not operable, or the vehicle must be towed faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or farther than 15 miles (24 km), tow with the rear wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a towing dolly, or (when using a suitable steering wheel stabilizer to hold the front wheels in the straight position) with rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground.

**CAUTION!**

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe engine and/or transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Four-Wheel Drive Models**

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transfer case is operable, the vehicle may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), **IF** the transfer case is in **NEUTRAL** and the transmission is in **PARK** (for automatic transmissions) or in **gear** (NOT in **NEUTRAL**, for manual transmissions). Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information and detailed instructions.

**CAUTION!**

- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used (if the remaining wheels are on the ground). Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

**NOTE:** For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Do not use a chain for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.
- Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps may become disengaged, causing serious injury.

**CAUTION!**

**Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.**

**ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Enhanced Accident Response System.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Enhanced Accident Response System (EARS) function.

**EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed under certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Event Data Recorder (EDR).





# SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

## CONTENTS

|                                             |     |                                                                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ SCHEDULED SERVICING . . . . .             | 361 | □ Front Driveshaft Lubrication — 2500/3500<br>(Four-Wheel Drive Models Only). . . . . | 378 |
| □ Maintenance Plan . . . . .                | 362 | □ Accessory Drive Belt Inspection . . . . .                                           | 379 |
| □ Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle . . . . .   | 365 | □ Body Lubrication . . . . .                                                          | 380 |
| ■ ENGINE COMPARTMENT . . . . .              | 366 | □ Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .                                                   | 381 |
| □ 6.4L Engine . . . . .                     | 366 | □ Exhaust System . . . . .                                                            | 384 |
| □ Checking Oil Level — Gas Engine . . . . . | 367 | □ Cooling System . . . . .                                                            | 386 |
| □ Adding Washer Fluid . . . . .             | 367 | □ Brake System . . . . .                                                              | 390 |
| □ Maintenance-Free Battery . . . . .        | 367 | □ Automatic Transmission . . . . .                                                    | 391 |
| ■ DEALER SERVICE . . . . .                  | 368 | □ Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid<br>Level . . . . .                       | 394 |
| □ Engine Oil — Gas Engine . . . . .         | 369 | □ Transfer Case . . . . .                                                             | 395 |
| □ Engine Oil Filter . . . . .               | 370 | ■ HOISTING . . . . .                                                                  | 395 |
| □ Engine Air Cleaner Filter . . . . .       | 370 |                                                                                       |     |
| □ Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . .     | 373 |                                                                                       |     |

|                                                                         |     |                                                |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ TIRES . . . . .                                                       | 396 | □ Temperature Grades . . . . .                 | 421 |
| □ Tire Safety Information . . . . .                                     | 396 | ■ STORING THE VEHICLE . . . . .                | 422 |
| □ Tires — General Information . . . . .                                 | 406 | ■ BODYWORK . . . . .                           | 422 |
| □ Tire Types . . . . .                                                  | 412 | □ Protection From Atmospheric Agents . . . . . | 422 |
| □ Spare Tires — If Equipped . . . . .                                   | 413 | □ Body And Underbody Maintenance . . . . .     | 423 |
| □ Wheel And Wheel Trim Care . . . . .                                   | 416 | □ Preserving The Bodywork . . . . .            | 423 |
| □ Tire Chains (Traction Devices) . . . . .                              | 417 | ■ INTERIORS . . . . .                          | 424 |
| □ Tire Rotation Recommendations . . . . .                               | 418 | □ Seats And Fabric Parts . . . . .             | 424 |
| ■ DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM<br>TIRE QUALITY GRADES . . . . . | 420 | □ Plastic And Coated Parts . . . . .           | 425 |
| □ Treadwear . . . . .                                                   | 421 | □ Leather Parts . . . . .                      | 426 |
| □ Traction Grades . . . . .                                             | 421 | □ Glass Surfaces . . . . .                     | 426 |

## SCHEDULED SERVICING

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures, and E85 fuel usage will influence when the “Oil Change Required” message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your authorized dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

## Gasoline Engines:

Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

## Severe Duty:

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

## Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:

- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check the tire inflation pressures and look for unusual wear or damage
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and automatic transmission, and fill as needed
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights

## Maintenance Plan

### Required Maintenance

Refer to the maintenance plan on the following pages for required maintenance.

| At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change oil and filter.</li> </ul>                                                                                                           |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate the tires. <b>Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.</b></li> </ul> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses.</li> </ul>                                                                              |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect exhaust system.</li> </ul>                                                                                                          |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions.</li> </ul>                                                             |

| At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required.</li> </ul>              |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect automatic transmission fluid if equipped with dipstick.</li> </ul>           |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake.</li> </ul>           |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.</li> </ul> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lube the front drive shaft fitting (4X4 models only).</li> </ul>                     |

| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)                                                                                                                                                            | 20,000 | 30,000 | 40,000 | 50,000 | 60,000 | 70,000  | 80,000  | 90,000  | 100,000 | 110,000 | 120,000 | 130,000 | 140,000 | 150,000 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Years:                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7       | 8       | 9       | 10      | 11      | 12      | 13      | 14      | 15      |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                                                                            | 32,000 | 48,000 | 64,000 | 80,000 | 96,000 | 112,000 | 128,000 | 144,000 | 160,000 | 176,000 | 192,000 | 208,000 | 224,000 | 240,000 |
| <b>Additional Inspections</b>                                                                                                                                                                             |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Inspect the CV/Universal joints.                                                                                                                                                                          |        | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Inspect front suspension, tie rod ends, and replace if necessary.                                                                                                                                         | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing, change axle fluid. | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| Inspect the brake linings, parking brake function.                                                                                                                                                        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| <b>Additional Maintenance</b>                                                                                                                                                                             |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Replace engine air filter.                                                                                                                                                                                |        | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Replace spark plugs. **                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         |
| Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.                                                                                                     |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         | X       |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid (AS66RC Transmission Only).                                                                                                                                       |        | X      |        |        |        |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         | X       |

| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)                                                                                                              | 20,000 | 30,000 | 40,000 | 50,000 | 60,000 | 70,000  | 80,000  | 90,000  | 100,000 | 110,000 | 120,000 | 130,000 | 140,000 | 150,000 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Years:                                                                                                                                                   | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7       | 8       | 9       | 10      | 11      | 12      | 13      | 14      | 15      |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                              | 32,000 | 48,000 | 64,000 | 80,000 | 96,000 | 112,000 | 128,000 | 144,000 | 160,000 | 176,000 | 192,000 | 208,000 | 224,000 | 240,000 |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS66RC Transmission Only).                                                                         |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE Transmission Only), if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing. |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE transmission).                                                                                 |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Inspect the transfer case fluid, change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.                                          |        | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Change the transfer case fluid.                                                                                                                             |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.                                                                                                                 |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         |

\*\* The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.

**WARNING!**

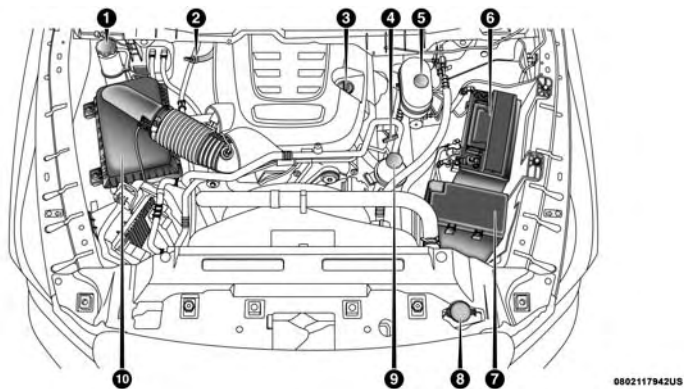
- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

**Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle**

Change engine oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

## 6.4L Engine



- 1 — Engine Coolant Pressure Cap
- 2 — Transmission Dipstick
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 6 — Battery
- 7 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 8 — Washer Solvent
- 9 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 10 — Air Cleaner Filter



## Checking Oil Level — Gas Engine

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals, such as every fuel stop. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

### CAUTION!

**Overfilling or underfilling will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.**

## Adding Washer Fluid

The fluid reservoir is located under the hood and should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator anti-freeze). When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe the wiper blades clean. This will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

### WARNING!

**Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.**

After the engine has warmed up, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Windshield washer solution used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces the freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

## Maintenance-Free Battery

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

**WARNING!**

- Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. Do not lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water. Refer to "Jump Starting Procedure" in "In Case Of Emergency" for further information.
- Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 Volts. Do not allow cable clamps to touch each other.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

**CAUTION!**

- It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- negative post. Battery posts are marked positive (+) and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Cable clamps should be tight on the terminal posts and free of corrosion.
- If a "fast charger" is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.

**DEALER SERVICE**

An authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

(Continued)

**WARNING!**

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

**Engine Oil — Gas Engine****Change Engine Oil**

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance. Refer to “Scheduled Servicing” in this chapter for further information.

**NOTE:** Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

**Engine Oil Selection — 6.4L**

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633.

**American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol**

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API Certified engine oils.

This symbol certifies 0W-20, 5W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 and 10W-30 engine oils.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your engine oil as the chemicals can damage your engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### **Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade) — 6.4L Engine**

Use Mopar SAE 0W-40 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-12633 such as Pennzoil Ultra equivalent is recommended for all operating temperatures.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to the “Engine Compartment” illustration in this section.

Lubricants which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

### **Synthetic Engine Oils**

You may use synthetic engine oils provided the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

Synthetic engine oils which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

### **Materials Added To Engine Oil**

The manufacturer strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes) to the

engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

### **Disposing Of Used Engine Oil And Oil Filters**

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact an authorized dealer, service station or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

### **Engine Oil Filter**

The engine oil filter should be replaced with a new filter at every engine oil change.

### **Engine Oil Filter Selection**

This manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type disposable oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar engine oil filters are high quality oil filters and are recommended.

### **Engine Air Cleaner Filter**

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” in this section for the proper maintenance intervals.

**NOTE:** Be sure to follow the “Severe Duty Conditions” maintenance interval if applicable.

### **WARNING!**

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

### **Engine Air Cleaner Filter Selection**

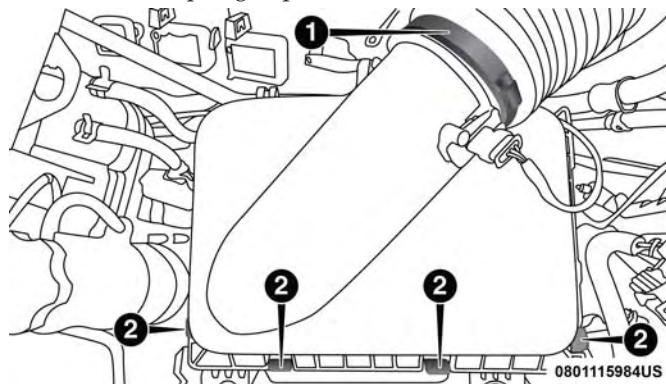
The quality of replacement engine air cleaner filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar engine air cleaner filters are a high quality filter and are recommended.

### **Engine Air Cleaner Filter Inspection and Replacement**

Inspect engine air cleaner filter for dirt and or debris, if you find evidence of either dirt or debris you should change your air cleaner filter.

### **Engine Air Cleaner Filter Removal**

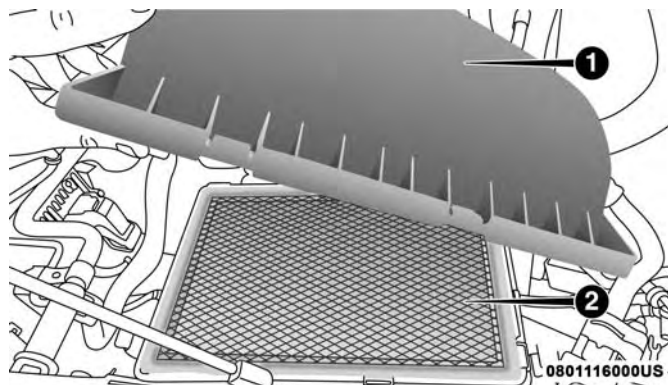
1. Release the spring clips from the air cleaner cover.



**Air Cleaner Filter Cover**

- 1 — Clean Air Hose Clamp  
2 — Spring Clips

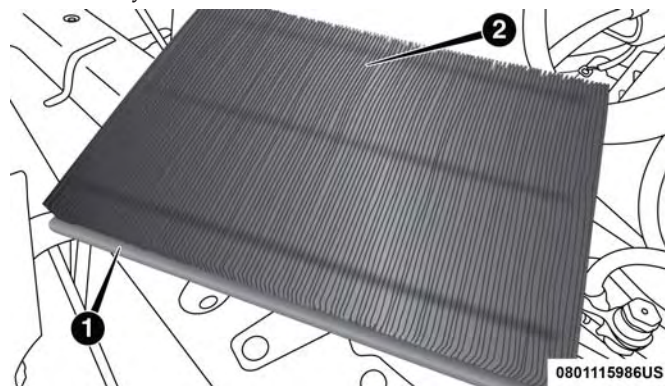
2. Lift the air cleaner cover to access the air cleaner filter.



**Open Air Cleaner Filter Assembly**

- 1 — Air Cleaner Cover  
2 — Air Cleaner Filter

3. Remove the air cleaner filter element from the housing assembly.



**Air Cleaner Filter**

- 1 — Air Cleaner Filter  
2 — Air Cleaner Filter Inspection Surface

### Engine Air Cleaner Filter Installation

**NOTE:** Inspect and clean the housing if dirt or debris is present before replacing the air filter element.

1. Install the air cleaner filter element into the housing assembly with the air cleaner filter inspection surface facing downward.

2. Install the air cleaner cover onto the housing assembly locating tabs.
3. Latch the spring clips and lock the air cleaner cover to the housing assembly.

### Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an authorized dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

#### WARNING!

- Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Warranty Information Book, for further warranty information.

*(Continued)*

#### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced technician.

#### CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your air conditioning system as the chemicals can damage your air conditioning components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling R-134a — If Equipped

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is an ozone-friendly substance. The manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by an authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:** Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

### Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling — R-1234yf

R-1234yf Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluoroolefin (HFO) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-friendly substance with a low global-warming potential. The manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by an authorized dealer using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:** Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil, and refrigerants.

### Cabin Filter Replacement (A/C Air Filter)

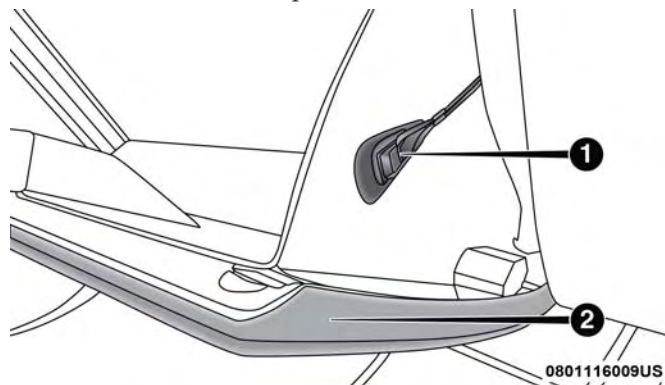
Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” for the proper maintenance intervals.

#### WARNING!

Do not remove the cabin air filter while the vehicle is running, or while the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. With the cabin air filter removed and the blower operating, the blower can contact hands and may propel dirt and debris into your eyes, resulting in personal injury.

The cabin air filter is located in the fresh air inlet behind the glove compartment. Perform the following procedure to replace the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment and remove all contents.
2. With the glove compartment door open, remove the glove compartment tension tether and tether clip by sliding the clip toward the face of the glove compartment door. Lift the clip out of glove compartment door and release into dash panel.

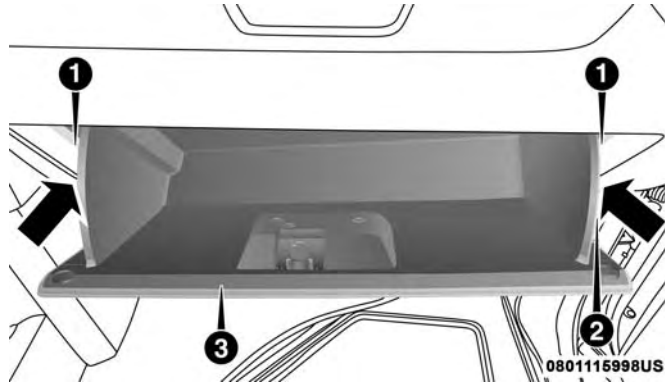


Right Side Of Glove Compartment

- 1 — Glove Compartment Tension Tether  
2 — Glove Compartment Door



3. There are glove compartment travel stops on both sides of the glove compartment door, push inward on both sides of the glove compartment to release the glove compartment travel stops.

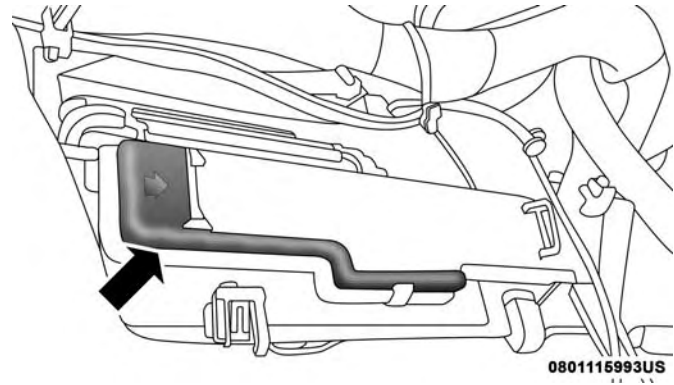


Glove Compartment

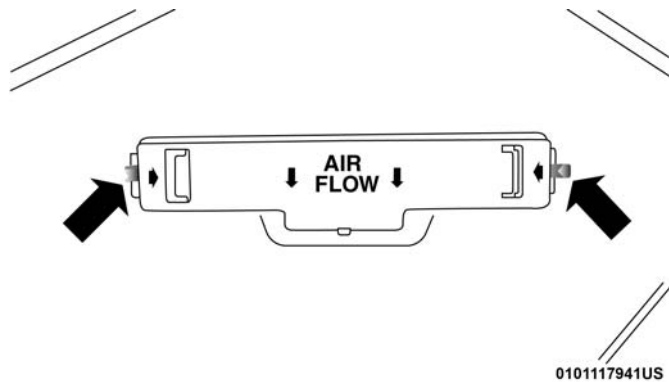
- 1 — Glove Compartment Travel Stops  
 2 — Glove Compartment Tension Tether  
 3 — Glove Compartment Door

4. Disengage the glove compartment door from its hinges by opening the glove compartment past the travel stop and pulling it toward you.

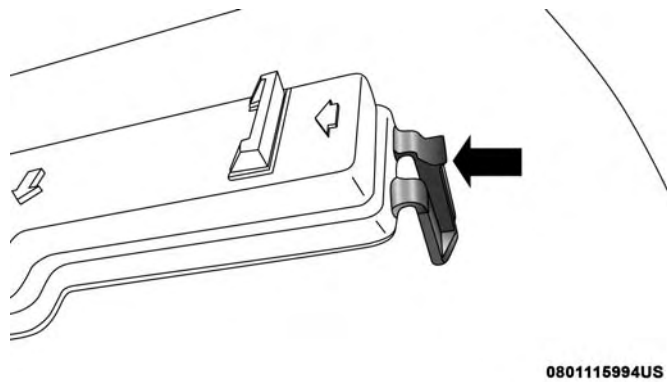
5. Remove the filter cover by pushing in on the finger tabs on each end of the filter cover.



Filter Cover

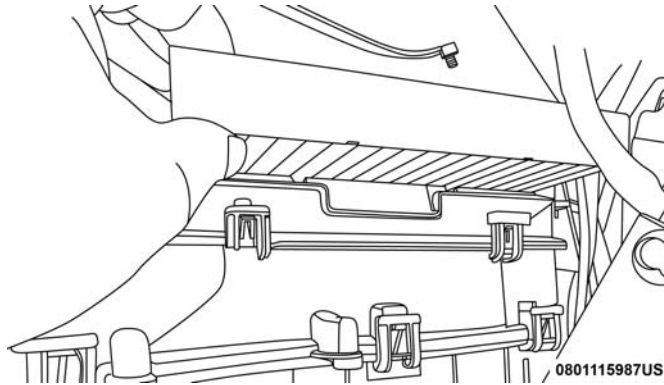


Finger Tabs



Finger Tab

6. Remove the cabin air filter by pulling it straight out of the housing.



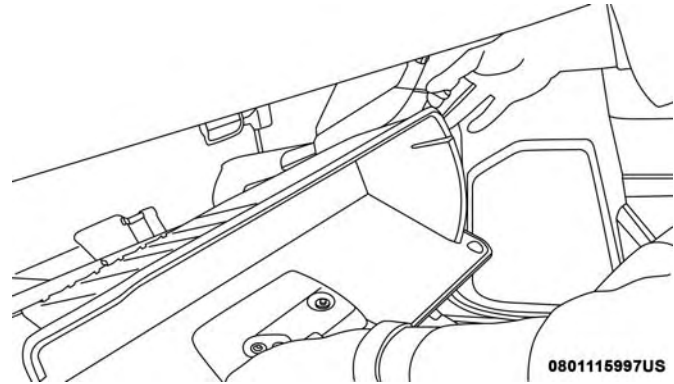
**Cabin Air Filter**

7. Install the cabin air filter with the arrow on the filter pointing toward the floor. When installing the filter cover, press on each end until you hear an audible click.

### **CAUTION!**

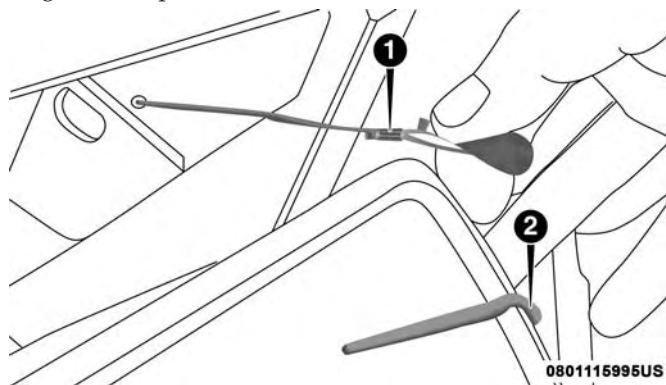
The cabin air filter is identified with an arrow to indicate airflow direction through the filter. Failure to properly install the filter will result in the need to replace it more often.

8. Reinstall the glove compartment on the hinges.



**Glove Compartment Installation**

9. Pull the tension tether outward and reinstall the glove compartment past the travel stops by pushing in on the glove compartment sides.



Right Side Of Glove Compartment

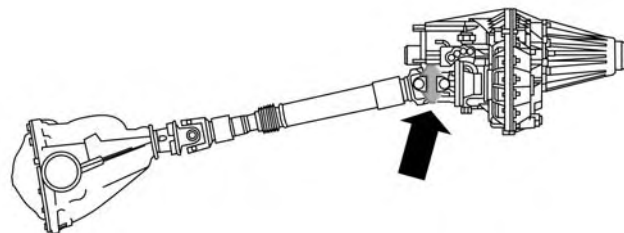
- 1 — Glove Compartment Tension Tether  
2 — Glove Compartment Travel Stop

**NOTE:** Ensure the glove compartment door hinges and glove compartment travel stops are fully engaged.

10. Reattach the glove compartment tension tether by inserting the tether clip in the glove compartment and sliding the clip away from the face of the glove compartment door.

### Front Driveshaft Lubrication — 2500/3500 (Four-Wheel Drive Models Only)

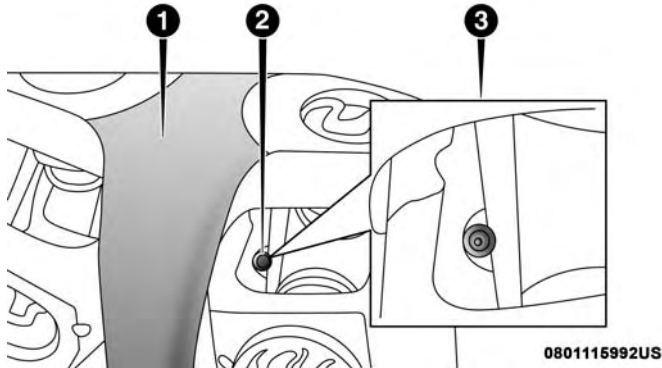
Lubricate the front driveshaft grease fitting at each oil change.



0801115996US

Front Drive Shaft Double Cardan Joint

The grease fitting is located at the rear of the front driveshaft, near the centering mechanism of double cardan joint. Refer to the "Maintenance Plan" for the proper maintenance intervals. Use Mopar Type MS-6560 (lithium-based grease), or equivalent.



**Double Cardan Joint**

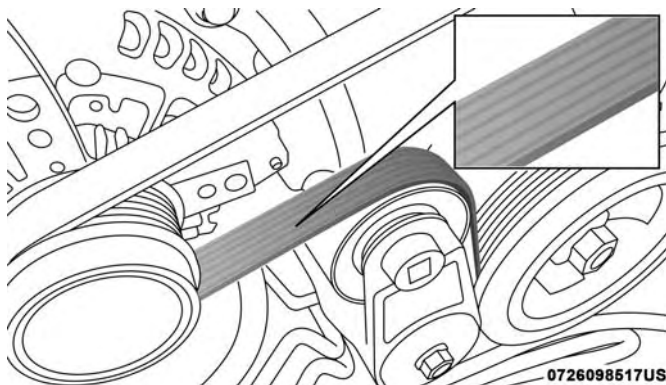
- 1 — Double Cardan Joint  
 2 — Grease Fitting  
 3 — Exploded View – Grease Fitting

## Accessory Drive Belt Inspection

### WARNING!

- Do not attempt to inspect an accessory drive belt with vehicle running.
- When working near the radiator cooling fan, disconnect the fan motor lead. The fan is temperature controlled and can start at any time regardless of ignition mode. You could be injured by the moving fan blades.
- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

When inspecting accessory drive belts, small cracks that run across ribbed surface of belt from rib to rib, are considered normal. These are not a reason to replace belt. However, cracks running along a rib (not across) are not normal. Any belt with cracks running along a rib must be replaced. Also have the belt replaced if it has excessive wear, frayed cords or severe glazing.



### Accessory Belt (Serpentine Belt)

Conditions that would require replacement:

- Rib chunking (one or more ribs has separated from belt body)
- Rib or belt wear
- Longitudinal belt cracking (cracks between two ribs)
- Belt slips
- "Groove jumping" (belt does not maintain correct position on pulley)
- Belt broken (note: identify and correct problem before new belt is installed)

- Noise (objectionable squeal, squeak, or rumble is heard or felt while drive belt is in operation)

Some conditions can be caused by a faulty component such as a belt pulley. Belt pulleys should be carefully inspected for damage and proper alignment.

Belt replacement on some models requires the use of special tools, we recommend having your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.

### Body Lubrication

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, door hinge pivot points and rollers, liftgate, tailgate, decklid, sliding doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically with a lithium based grease, such as Mopar Spray White Lube to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to hood latching components to ensure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the Fall and Spring. Apply a small amount of a high quality lubricant, such as Mopar Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

### Windshield Wiper Blades

Clean the rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

**NOTE:** Life expectancy of wiper blades varies depending on geographical area and frequency of use. Poor performance of blades may be present with chattering, marks, water lines or wet spots. If any of these conditions are present, clean the wiper blades or replace as necessary.

The wiper blades and wiper arms should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

- Wear or uneven edges
- Foreign material
- Hardening or cracking
- Deformation or fatigue

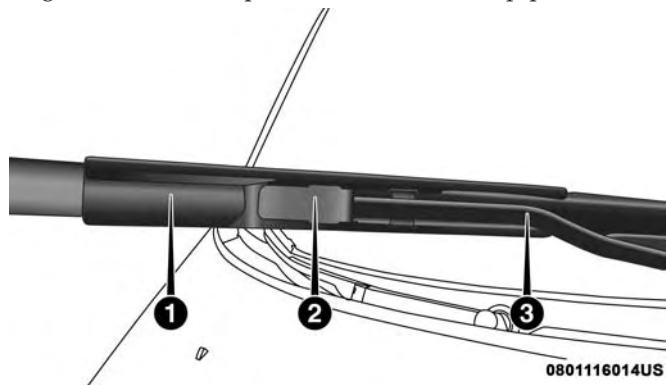
If a wiper blade or wiper arm is damaged, replace the affected wiper arm or blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm or blade that is damaged.

### Wiper Blade Removal/Installation

#### CAUTION!

**Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.**

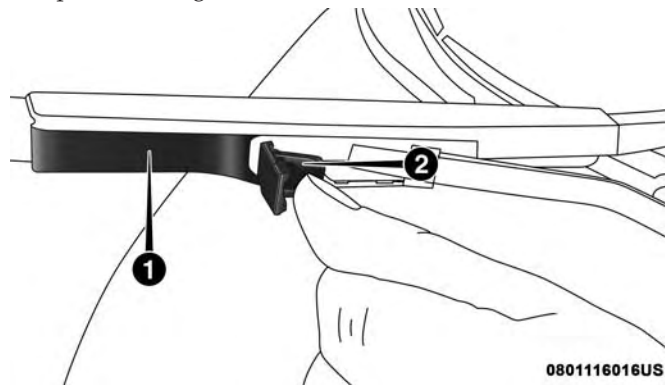
1. Lift the wiper arm to raise the wiper blade off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.



Windshield Wiper Arm

- 1 — Wiper
- 2 — Locking Tab
- 3 — Wiper Arm

2. To disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm, flip up the locking tab.

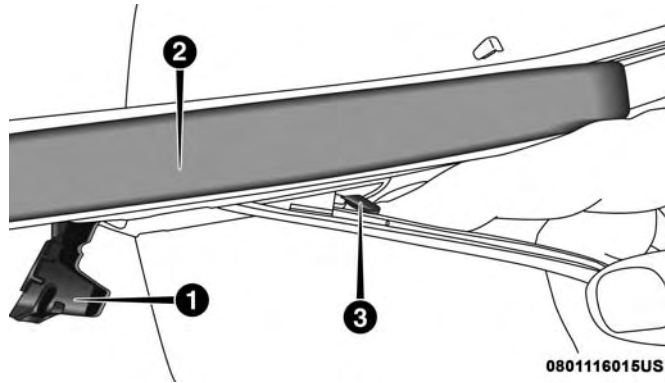


Wiper Locking Assembly

- 1 — Wiper
- 2 — Locking Tab



3. Tilt the lower end of the wiper blade away from the arm and use one finger push the release tab toward the wiper arm.

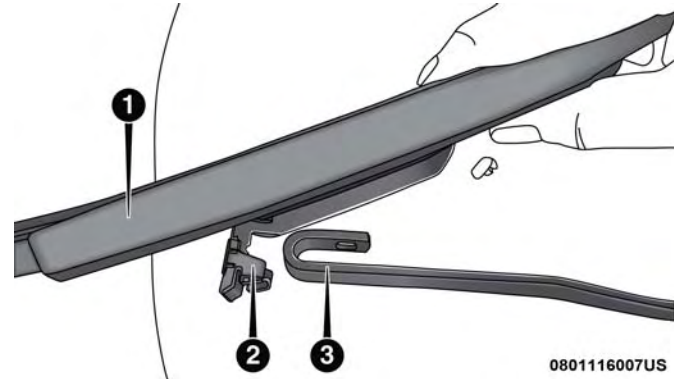


**Wiper Disengaging**

- 1 — Locking Tab  
2 — Wiper  
3 — Release Tab

4. Slide the wiper blade down towards the base of the wiper arm.

5. With the wiper blade disengaged, remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm by holding the wiper arm with one hand and separating the wiper blade from the wiper arm with the other hand (move the wiper blade down toward the base of the wiper arm and away from the J hook in the end of the wiper arm).



**Removing Wiper From Wiper Arm**

- 1 — Wiper  
2 — Locking Tab  
3 — Wiper Arm J Hook

6. Gently lower the wiper arm onto the glass.

## Installing The Front Wipers

1. Lift the wiper arm off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.
2. Position the wiper blade under the hook on the tip of the wiper arm with the wiper locking tab open.
3. Insert the receiver bracket on the wiper assembly into the hook on the tip of the arm through the opening in the wiper blade under the locking tab.
4. Slide the wiper blade up into the hook on the wiper arm until it is latched (engagement will be accompanied by an audible click). Fold down the latch release tab and snap it into its locked position.
5. Gently lower the wiper blade onto the glass.

## Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

If you notice a change in the sound of the exhaust system; or if the exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle; or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged;

have an authorized technician inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, have the exhaust system inspected each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

### WARNING!

- Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, refer to "Safety Tips" in "Safety" for further information.
- A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

**CAUTION!**

- The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emissions control device and may seriously reduce engine performance and cause serious damage to the engine.
- Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and vehicle.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may suggest severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and allow it to cool. Service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

To minimize the possibility of catalytic converter damage:

- Do not interrupt the ignition when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any ignition components disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idle or malfunctioning operating conditions.

## Cooling System

### WARNING!

- You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.
- Keep hands, tools, clothing, and jewelry away from the radiator cooling fan when the hood is raised. The fan starts automatically and may start at any time, whether the engine is running or not.
- When working near the radiator cooling fan, disconnect the fan motor lead or turn the ignition to the OFF mode. The fan is temperature controlled and can start at any time the ignition is in the ON mode.

### Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check the front of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or radiator for any accumulation

of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or the back of the radiator core.

Check the engine cooling system hoses for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the coolant recovery bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

**DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.**

### Cooling System — Drain, Flush And Refill

**NOTE:** Some vehicles require special tools to add coolant properly. Failure to fill these systems properly could lead to severe internal engine damage. If any coolant is needed to be added to the system please contact an authorized dealer.

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or contains visible sediment, have an authorized dealer clean and flush with OAT coolant (antifreeze) (conforming to MS.90032).

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” in this section for the proper maintenance intervals.

### Selection Of Coolant

Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

**NOTE:**

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.
- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycolbased engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.

- Some vehicles require special tools to add coolant properly. Failure to fill these systems properly could lead to severe internal engine damage. If any coolant is needed to be added to the system please contact an authorized dealer.

**Adding Coolant**

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) that allows extended maintenance intervals. This engine coolant (antifreeze) can be used up to ten years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) throughout the life of your vehicle.

Please review these recommendations for using Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032. When adding engine coolant (antifreeze):

- We recommend using Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile (240,000 km) Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology) that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.

- Mix a minimum solution of 50% OAT engine coolant that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032 and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-37^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) are anticipated. Please contact an authorized dealer for assistance.
- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant (antifreeze) solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

**NOTE:**

- It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.
- Some vehicles require special tools to add coolant properly. Failure to fill these systems properly could lead to severe internal engine damage. If any coolant is needed to be added to the system, please contact a local authorized dealer.
- Mixing engine coolant (antifreeze) types is not recommended and can result in cooling system damage. If

HOAT and OAT coolant are mixed in an emergency, have a authorized dealer drain, flush, and refill with OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) as soon as possible.

**Cooling System Pressure Cap**

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of engine coolant (antifreeze), and to ensure that engine coolant (antifreeze) will return to the radiator from the coolant expansion bottle/recovery tank if so equipped.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

**WARNING!**

- **Do not open hot engine cooling system. Never add engine coolant (antifreeze) when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**
- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

## Disposal Of Used Coolant

Used ethylene glycol-based coolant (antifreeze) is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children, do not store ethylene glycol-based coolant in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child or pet, seek emergency assistance immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

## Checking Coolant Level — 6.4L Engine

The level of the coolant in the pressurized coolant bottle should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” range on the bottle when the engine is cold.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the cap unless checking for coolant freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month. When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

## Points To Remember

**NOTE:** When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles/kilometers of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot engine coolant (antifreeze) to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant expansion bottle.
- Check the coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant expansion bottle. If engine coolant (antifreeze) needs to be added, the contents of the coolant expansion bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) additions are required, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.

- Maintain engine coolant (antifreeze) concentration at a minimum of 50% OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the coolant expansion bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean.
- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory engine coolant (antifreeze) performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

## Brake System

In order to assure brake system performance, all brake system components should be inspected periodically. Refer to the "Maintenance Plan" in this section for the proper maintenance intervals.

### WARNING!

**Riding the brakes can lead to brake failure and possibly a collision. Driving with your foot resting or riding on the brake pedal can result in abnormally high brake temperatures, excessive lining wear, and possible brake damage. You would not have your full braking capacity in an emergency.**

### Fluid Level Check — Brake Master Cylinder

The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service or immediately if the brake system warning lamp indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a "MAX" mark and a "MIN" mark. The fluid level must be kept within these two marks. Do not add fluid above the MAX mark because leakage may occur at the cap.

With disc brakes the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.



Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

### **WARNING!**

- Use only manufacturer’s recommended brake fluid. Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for further information. Using the wrong type of brake fluid can severely damage your brake system and/or impair its performance. The proper type of brake fluid for your vehicle is also identified on the original factory installed hydraulic master cylinder reservoir.
- To avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture, use only new brake fluid or fluid that has been in a tightly closed container. Keep the master cylinder reservoir cap secured at all times. Brake fluid in a open container absorbs moisture from the air resulting in a lower boiling point. This may cause it to boil unexpectedly during hard or prolonged braking, resulting in sudden brake failure. This could result in a collision.

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts, causing the brake fluid to catch fire. Brake fluid can also damage painted and vinyl surfaces, care should be taken to avoid its contact with these surfaces.
- Do not allow petroleum based fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Brake seal components could be damaged, causing partial or complete brake failure. This could result in a collision.

## **Automatic Transmission**

### **Selection Of Lubricant**

It is important to use the proper transmission fluid to ensure optimum transmission performance and life. Use only the manufacturer’s specified transmission fluid. Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications”. It is important to maintain the transmission fluid at the correct level using the recommended fluid. No chemical flushes should be used in any transmission; only the approved lubricant should be used.

**CAUTION!**

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder, and will require more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to "Fluids And Lubricants" in "Technical Specifications" for fluid specifications.

**Special Additives**

The manufacturer strongly recommends against using any special additives in the transmission. Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives. Therefore, do not add any fluid additives to the transmission. The only exception to this policy is the use of special dyes for diagnosing fluid leaks. Avoid using transmission sealers as they may adversely affect seals.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your transmission as the chemicals can damage your transmission components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Fluid Level Check**

Check the fluid level when the engine is fully warmed up and the transmission fluid is at normal operating temperature. Driving with an improper fluid level will greatly reduce the life of the transmission and of the fluid. Check the fluid level whenever the vehicle is serviced.

**Fluid Level Check — Procedure**

It is best to check the fluid level when the transmission is at normal operating temperature (170-180°F / 77-82°C for 66RFE transmission, or 158-176°F / 70-80°C for AS66RC transmission). This normally occurs after at least 15 miles (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips. You can read the transmission sump temperature in the instrument cluster display (refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information).

Use the following procedure to check the transmission fluid level properly:

1. Monitor the transmission temperature using the instrument cluster display, and operate the vehicle as required to reach the normal operating temperature. If the transmission is not functioning properly, or the vehicle

cannot be driven, see the NOTE and CAUTION below about checking the fluid level at colder temperatures.

2. Park the vehicle on level ground.
3. Run the engine at normal idle speed for at least 60 seconds, and leave the engine running for the rest of this procedure.
4. Fully apply the parking brake and press the brake pedal.
5. Place the gear selector momentarily into each gear position (allowing time for the transmission to fully engage in each position), ending with the transmission in PARK.
6. Wipe the area around the dipstick clean to prevent dirt from entering the transmission.
7. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.
8. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level reading is only valid if there is a solid coating of oil on both sides of the dipstick. Note that the holes in the dipstick will be full of fluid if the actual level is at or above the hole. The fluid level should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. If the

fluid level is low, add fluid through the dipstick tube to bring it to the proper level. **Do not overfill.** Use ONLY the specified fluid (see "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" for fluid specifications). After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

**NOTE:** If it is necessary to check the transmission **below** the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two "COLD" (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at 60-70°F / 16-21°C for 66RFE transmission, or 68-86°F / 20-30°C for AS66RC transmission. Only use the COLD region of the dipstick as a rough reference when setting the fluid level after a transmission service or fluid change. Re-check the fluid level, and adjust as required, once the transmission reaches normal operating temperature.

### CAUTION!

If the fluid temperature is below 50°F (10°C) it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading. Run the engine at idle, in PARK, to warm the fluid.

9. Reinsert the dipstick. Check for leaks. Release the parking brake.

**NOTE:** To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make sure that the dipstick cap is properly resealed. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

### Fluid And Filter Changes

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” for the proper maintenance intervals.

In addition, change the fluid and filters if the fluid becomes contaminated (with water, etc.), or if the transmission is disassembled for any reason.

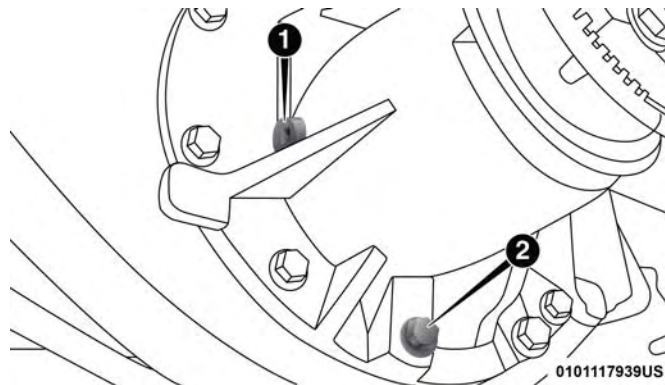
### Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level

For models with 9.25 in Front Axles and 11.5 in Rear Axles, refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for further information. For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons, the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected.

When checking the fluid level (4500/5500 only), the vehicle should be in a level position. The fluid level should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  in  $\pm \frac{1}{4}$  in (6.4 mm  $\pm$  6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the front axle. The fluid level should be level with the bottom of the fill hole on the rear axle.

### Drain And Refill

On 4500/5500 vehicles, remove the lower bolt to drain the axle fluid.



4500/5500 Rear Axle Plugs

1 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Fill Plug

2 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Drain Plug

Refer to “Scheduled Servicing” in this chapter for the proper maintenance intervals.

### Lubricant Selection

Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

**NOTE:** The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

**Limited-Slip Differentials DO NOT REQUIRE** any limited slip oil additive (friction modifiers).

**NOTE:** Slight noise and mild shuddering may be evident while turning a vehicle with limited slip differential on concrete or dry pavement. These conditions should be considered normal operation of the limited slip differential.

### Transfer Case

#### Selection Of Lubricant

Use only the manufacturer’s recommended fluid. Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

### Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

### Drain And Refill

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” in this section for the proper maintenance intervals.

### HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts of the underbody.

#### CAUTION!

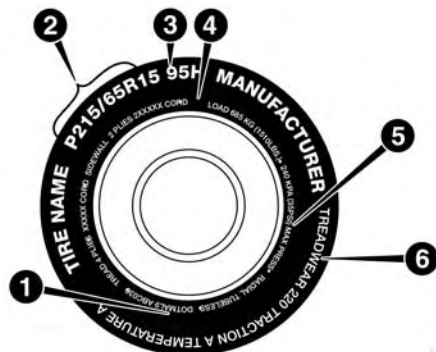
**Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.**

## TIRES

## Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information: Tire Markings, Tire Identification Numbers, Tire Terminology and Definitions, Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading.

## Tire Markings



0601085395US

## Tire Markings

- |                                          |                                                |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN) | 4 — Maximum Load                               |
| 2 — Size Designation                     | 5 — Maximum Pressure                           |
| 3 — Service Description                  | 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades |

**NOTE:**

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter “P” is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter “T” or “S” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

*Tire Sizing Chart***EXAMPLE:**


---

**Example Size Designation:** P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT

---

P = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or

"...blank..." = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or

LT = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or

T or S = Temporary spare tire or

31 = Overall diameter in inches (in)

---

215, 235, 145 = Section width in millimeters (mm)

---

65, 85, 80 = Aspect ratio in percent (%)

– Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or

10.5 = Section width in inches (in)

---

R = Construction code

– "R" means radial construction, or

– "D" means diagonal or bias construction

---

15, 16, 18 = Rim diameter in inches (in)



**EXAMPLE:****Service Description:**

**95** = Load Index

- A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry

**H** = Speed Symbol

- A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions
- The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

**Load Identification:**

Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

- **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or
- **LL** = Light load tire or
- **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

**Maximum Load** – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

**Maximum Pressure** – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

### Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for

the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

| EXAMPLE:                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| DOT = Department of Transportation                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| – This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use                                            |  |
| MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)                                                                                                                                |  |
| L9 = Code representing the tire size (two digits)                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| ABCD = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)                                                                                                                                     |  |
| 03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)                                                                                                                  |  |
| – 03 means the 3rd week                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
| 01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)                                                                                                                  |  |
| – 01 means the year 2001                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| – Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991 |  |

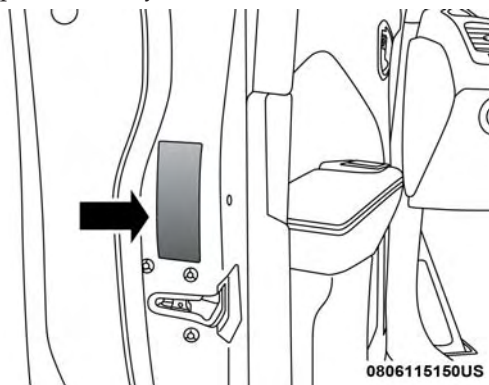
## Tire Terminology And Definitions

| Term                                            | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>B-Pillar</b>                                 | The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>             | Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals). |
| <b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>               | The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b> | Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Tire Placard</b>                             | A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.                                                                                                                                |

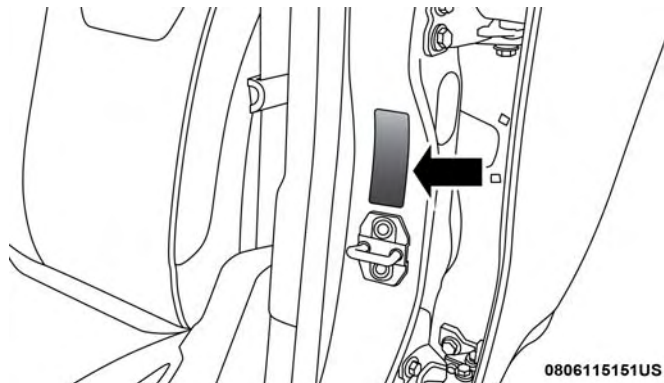
## Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

**NOTE:** The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

Check the inflation pressure of each tire, including the spare tire (if equipped), at least monthly and inflate to the recommended pressure for your vehicle.



Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

## Tire And Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

### Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

## Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

**NOTE:** Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded.

For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

**Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—**

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$  lbs.)
- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**Metric Example For Load Limit**

For example, if “XXX” amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg ( $635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295$  kg) as shown in step 4.

**NOTE:**

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

| Occupants        |       |      | Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard | MINUS | Combined Occupant's weight | = | AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight |
|------------------|-------|------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| TOTAL            | FRONT | REAR |                                                          |       |                            |   |                                                   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 1</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                  | minus | 670 lbs                    | = | 195 lbs                                           |
| 5                | 2     | 3    |                                                          |       |                            |   |                                                   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 2</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                  | minus | 540 lbs                    | = | 325 lbs                                           |
| 3                | 2     | 1    |                                                          |       |                            |   |                                                   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 3</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                  | minus | 400 lbs                    | = | 465 lbs                                           |
| 2                | 2     | 0    |                                                          |       |                            |   |                                                   |

511a4d11

**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

## Tires — General Information

### Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety and Vehicle Stability
- Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort

### Safety

#### **WARNING!**

- Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.
- Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.
- Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.

#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.
- Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

#### **NOTE:**

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

*(Continued)*



## Fuel Economy

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

## Tread Wear

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

## Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

## Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

## CAUTION!

**After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.**

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

### Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to an authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

#### **WARNING!**

**High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).**

### Radial Ply Tires

#### **WARNING!**

**Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.**

### Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a ¼ of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

## Run Flat Tires — If Equipped

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

## Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

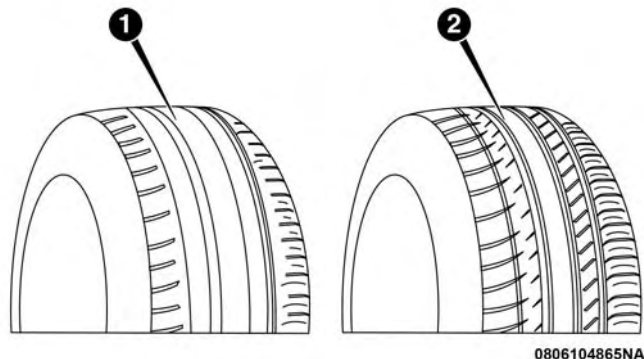
Refer to "Freeing A Stuck Vehicle" in "In Case Of Emergency" in your Owner's Manual for further information.

### WARNING!

**Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.**

## Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



Tire Tread

- 1 — Worn Tire  
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to “Replacement Tires” in this section for further information.

## Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.
- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle scheduled maintenance is highly recommended.

**WARNING!**

**Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.**

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

**Replacement Tires**

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicators" in this section. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall.

See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the "Tire Safety Information" section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact an authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- **Do not use a tire, wheel size, load rating, or speed rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.
- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**CAUTION!**

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

**Tire Types****All Season Tires — If Equipped**

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

**Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped**

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

**WARNING!**

**Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.**

## Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a “mountain/snowflake” symbol on the tire sidewall.



If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

## Spare Tires — If Equipped

**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to “Tire Service Kit” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### CAUTION!

**Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.**

## Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

### Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter "T" or "S" preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

### WARNING!

**Compact and collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

### Collapsible Spare Tire — If Equipped

The collapsible spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a collapsible spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire.

Collapsible spare tire description example: 165/80-17 101P.

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Inflate collapsible tire only after the wheel is properly installed to the vehicle. Inflate the collapsible tire using the electric air pump before lowering the vehicle.



Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the collapsible spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the collapsible spare tire.

### **WARNING!**

**Compact and Collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

### **Full Size Spare — If Equipped**

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

### **Limited Use Spare — If Equipped**

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

### **WARNING!**

**Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limited use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.**

## Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle and remember to always wash when the surfaces are not hot to the touch.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

### CAUTION!

**Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. Many aftermarket wheel cleaners and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.**

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels.

### CAUTION!

**Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.**

**NOTE:** If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle and apply the brakes to remove the water droplets from the brake components. This activity will remove the red rust on the brake rotors and prevent vehicle vibration when braking.

Dark Vapor Chrome, Black Satin Chrome, or Low Gloss Clear Coat Wheels

**CAUTION!**

If your vehicle is equipped with these specialty wheels, **DO NOT USE** wheel cleaners, abrasives, or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. **HAND WASH ONLY USING MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH.** Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

**Tire Chains (Traction Devices)**

Use of traction devices require sufficient tire-to-body clearance. Follow these recommendations to guard against damage.

- Traction device must be of proper size for the tire, as recommended by the traction device manufacturer.

Please follow the table below for proper tire size, chain type, and axle recommendations:

| Vehicle                                       | Axle Recommendations | Tire Sizes   | Chain Class |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Chassis Cab 3500 (Single Rear Wheel) Models   | Rear Only            | LT275/70R18E | U Class     |
| Chassis Cab 3500 (Dual Rear Wheel) 4X2 Models | Rear Only            | LT235/80R17E | U Class     |
| Chassis Cab 3500 (Dual Rear Wheel) 4X4 Models | Front/Rear           | LT235/80R17E | U Class     |
| Chassis Cab 4500/5500 Models                  | Rear Only            | 225/70R19.5G | U Class     |

**WARNING!**

Using tires of different size and type (M+S, Snow) between front and rear axles can cause unpredictable handling. You could lose control and have a collision.

**CAUTION!**

To avoid damage to your vehicle or tires, observe the following precautions:

- Because of restricted traction device clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only traction devices in good condition are used. Broken devices can cause serious damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could indicate device breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the device before further use.
- Install device as tightly as possible and then re-tighten after driving about ½ mile (0.8 km).
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.
- Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Observe the traction device manufacturer's instructions on the method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for use. Always use the suggested operating speed of the device manufacturer's if it is less than 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Do not use traction devices on a compact spare tire.

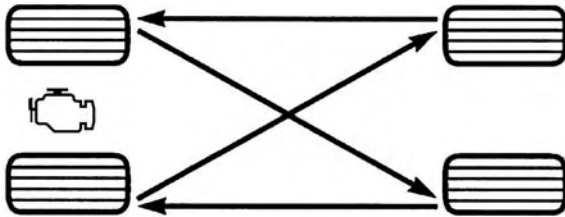
**Tire Rotation Recommendations**

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates.

These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

(Continued)

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” for the proper maintenance intervals. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

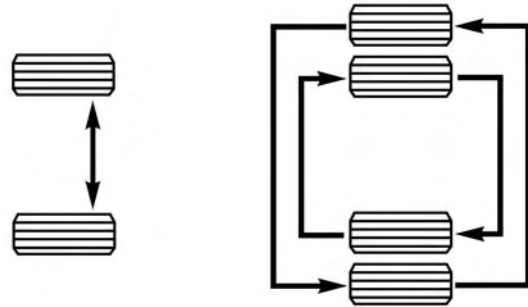


055703771

### Tire Rotation

**NOTE:** On Canadian vehicles only, if your vehicle is equipped with All-Season type tires on the front and On/Off Road type tires mounted on the rear, do not use a front to back rotation pattern. Instead, rotate your tires side to side at the recommended intervals.

### Dual Rear Wheels



055740470

### Tire Rotation

The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS):

- The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses unique sensors in the inner rear wheels to help identify them from the outer rear wheels, because of this, the inner and outer wheel locations can't be switched.

- After a tire rotation is completed, as shown below, the system can auto learn the locations of each sensor ID. Auto learning/localization occurs when the vehicle ignition status is changed from Off to On and speeds of greater than 5 mph (8km/h) are obtained and remain over 5mph (8km/h) for at about a 15 minute period. You may need to drive for 20 minutes to account slower speeds and stops.
- If the tires are rotated incorrectly, the Auto localization of the TPIS sensors will fail to locate correctly resulting in incorrect locations for the pressure values displayed in the Instrument Cluster.

**CAUTION!**

- **4500/5500 Dual Rear Tires may only have one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the On/Off road tire.**

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim or installed at a different location to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the vehicle. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be remounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical tires will maintain proper position.**

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES**

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

## Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### WARNING!

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

## Temperature Grades

The Temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING!**

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

**STORING THE VEHICLE**

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the negative cable from battery.
- Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

**BODYWORK****Protection From Atmospheric Agents**

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

**What Causes Corrosion?**

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.



The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

## Body And Underbody Maintenance

### Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlights and fog lights that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

## Preserving The Bodywork

### Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using Mopar Car Wash, or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar, or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use Mopar Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as Mopar Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

### CAUTION!

- Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder that will scratch metal and painted surfaces.
- Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8,274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

## Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to a collision or similar cause that destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use Mopar Touch Up Paint on scratches as soon as possible. An authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

## INTERIORS

### Seats And Fabric Parts

Use Mopar Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

#### **WARNING!**

**Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.**

### Stain Repel Fabric Cleaning Procedure — If Equipped

Stain Repel seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.
- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.
- For tough stains, apply Mopar Total Clean, or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply Mopar Multi-Purpose Cleaner to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any harsh solvents or any other form of protectants on Stain Repel products.

## Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

**NOTE:** If the belts retract slowly, inspect the upper turning loop for soiling. If soiling is present, clean with a wet soft cloth until all residue is removed.

### WARNING!

**A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).**

## Plastic And Coated Parts

Use Mopar Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

### CAUTION!

- Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.
- Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth.
2. Dry with a soft cloth.

## Leather Parts

Mopar Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and Mopar Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

**NOTE:** If equipped with light colored leather, it tends to show any foreign material, dirt, and fabric dye transfer more so than darker colors. The leather is designed for easy cleaning, and FCA recommends Mopar total care leather cleaner applied on a cloth to clean the leather seats as needed.

### CAUTION!

**Do not use Alcohol and Alcohol-based and/or Ketone based cleaning products to clean leather seats, as damage to the seat may result.**

## Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with Mopar Glass Cleaner, or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

# TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

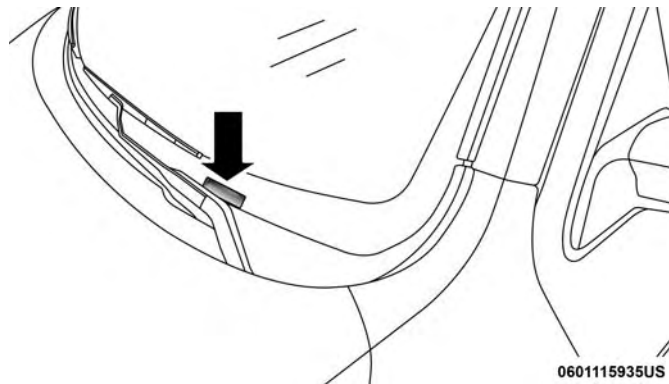
## CONTENTS

|                                           |     |                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ IDENTIFICATION DATA . . . . .           | 428 | □ Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends . . . . .             | 433 |
| □ Vehicle Identification Number . . . . . | 428 | □ Do Not Use E-85 In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles . . . | 434 |
| ■ BRAKE SYSTEM . . . . .                  | 428 | □ CNG And LP Fuel System Modifications . . . .    | 434 |
| □ Hydraulic Brake Assist . . . . .        | 429 | □ MMT In Gasoline . . . . .                       | 434 |
| ■ WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS .  | 429 | □ Fuel System Cautions . . . . .                  | 435 |
| □ Torque Specifications . . . . .         | 429 | □ Carbon Monoxide Warnings . . . . .              | 435 |
| ■ FUEL REQUIREMENTS . . . . .             | 432 | ■ FLUID CAPACITIES . . . . .                      | 436 |
| □ 6.4L Engine . . . . .                   | 432 | ■ FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS . . . . .                 | 437 |
| □ Reformulated Gasoline . . . . .         | 432 | □ Engine . . . . .                                | 437 |
| □ Materials Added To Fuel . . . . .       | 432 | □ Chassis . . . . .                               | 439 |

## IDENTIFICATION DATA

### Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the vehicle frame and underbody as well as the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



**Vehicle Identification Number**

**NOTE:** It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN.

## BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle.

If either the front or rear hydraulic system loses normal braking capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the "Brake Warning Light" and the "ABS Warning Light" (if equipped) during brake use.

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydro-boost unit which shares fluid with the power steering system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

**NOTE:** Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

## Hydraulic Brake Assist

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydro-boost unit which shares fluid with the power steering system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

**NOTE:** Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle, the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench using a high quality six sided (hex) deep wall socket.

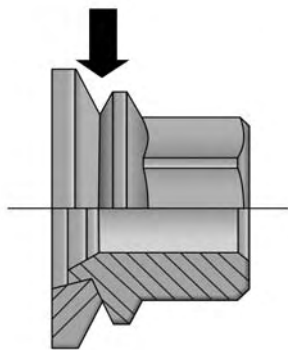
## Torque Specifications

| Lug Nut/<br>Bolt Torque              | Lug Nut/<br>Bolt Type | **Lug Nut/<br>Bolt Size | Lug Nut/<br>Bolt Socket<br>Size |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 120-150 Ft-<br>Lbs (160-<br>200 N·m) | Cone                  | M14 x 1.50              | 22 mm                           |
| 130-160 Ft-<br>Lbs (190-<br>220 N·m) | Flanged               |                         |                                 |

\*\*Use only your authorized dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.

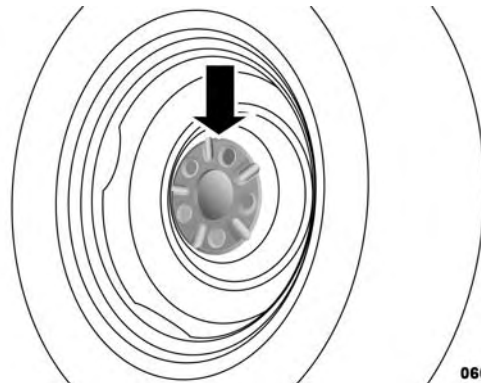
**NOTE:** Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer. Ensure that the socket is fully engaged on the lug nut/bolt (do not insert it half way).



0322115841US

### Oil Interface Location

Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

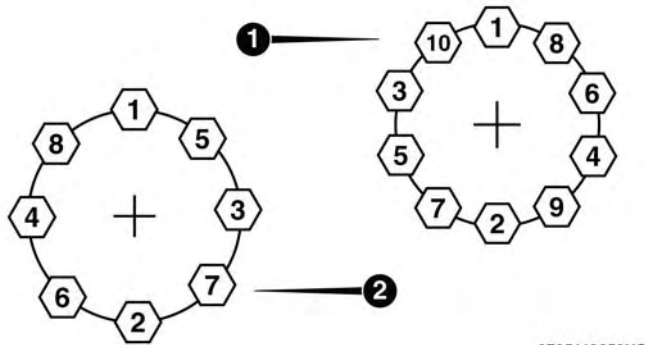


0605097260US

### Wheel Mounting Surface



Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications after 25 miles (40 km) and check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.



0705119650US

8/10 Lug Nuts/Bolts Torque Patterns

1 — 10 Bolt Pattern

2 — 8 Bolt Pattern

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All wheel nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The wheel nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the wheel nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the wheel nut opposite to the wheel nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved.

### WARNING!

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### 6.4L Engine

Do not use E-85 flex fuel or ethanol blends greater than 15% in this engine.



This engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having a posted octane number range of 87 to 89 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method.

The use of 89 octane "Plus" gasoline is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

While operating on gasoline with an octane number of 87, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with an octane number lower than 87 can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

### Reformulated Gasoline

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline". Reformulated gasoline contains oxygenates and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

The use of reformulated gasoline is recommended. Properly blended reformulated gasoline will provide improved performance and durability of engine and fuel system components.

### Materials Added To Fuel

Besides using unleaded gasoline with the proper octane rating, gasolines that contain detergents, corrosion and stability additives are recommended. Using gasolines that have these additives will help improve fuel economy, reduce emissions, and maintain vehicle performance.



Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aid in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of TOP TIER Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com) for a list of TOP

TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

## Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as ethanol.

### CAUTION!

**DO NOT use E-85, gasoline containing methanol, or gasoline containing more than 15% ethanol (E-15). Use of these blends may result in starting and drivability problems, damage critical fuel system components, cause emissions to exceed the applicable standard, and/or cause the "Malfunction Indicator Light" to illuminate. Please observe pump labels as they should clearly communicate if a fuel contains greater than 15% ethanol (E-15).**

Problems that result from using gasoline containing more than 15% ethanol (E-15) or gasoline containing methanol are not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### **Do Not Use E-85 In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles**

Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles (FFV) are compatible with gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol (E-15). Use of gasoline with higher ethanol content may void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

If a Non-FFV vehicle is inadvertently fueled with E-85 fuel, the engine will have some or all of these symptoms:

- Operate in a lean mode.
- OBD II “Malfunction Indicator Light” on.
- Poor engine performance.
- Poor cold start and cold drivability.
- Increased risk for fuel system component corrosion.

### **CNG And LP Fuel System Modifications**

Modifications that allow the engine to run on compressed natural gas (CNG) or liquid propane (LP) may result in damage to the engine, emissions, and fuel system components. Problems that result from running CNG or LP are not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### **MMT In Gasoline**

Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl (MMT) is a manganese-containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasoline blended with MMT provides no performance advantage beyond gasoline of the same octane number without MMT. Gasoline blended with MMT reduces spark plug life and reduces emissions system performance in some vehicles. The manufacturer recommends that gasoline without MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump; therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether the gasoline contains MMT. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasoline.

## Fuel System Cautions

### CAUTION!

Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

- The use of leaded gasoline is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance and damage the emissions control system.
- An out-of-tune engine or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact an authorized dealer for service assistance.
- The use of fuel additives, which are now being sold as octane enhancers, is not recommended. Most of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with the emissions control system can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

## Carbon Monoxide Warnings

### WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas, which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.
- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.

FLUID CAPACITIES

|                                                                                           | U.S.        | Metric      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>                                                                 |             |             |
| Standard Rear Tank                                                                        | 52 Gallons  | 197 Liters  |
| Optional Midship Tank                                                                     | 22 Gallons  | 83 Liters   |
| <b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>                                                             |             |             |
| 6.4L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 0W-40, Synthetic API Certified)                     | 7 Quarts    | 6.6 Liters  |
| <b>Cooling System</b>                                                                     |             |             |
| 6.4L Engine (We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula). | 16.6 Quarts | 15.7 Liters |

## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

### Engine

| Component                       | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine Coolant                  | We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10-Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Engine Oil – 6.4L Engine        | For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends full synthetic engine oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) categories of SN. The manufacturer recommends the use of Pennzoil Ultra 0W-40 or equivalent Mopar engine oil meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures. |
| Engine Oil Filter – 6.4L Engine | We recommend you use Mopar Engine Oil Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Spark Plugs – 6.4L Engine       | We recommend you use Mopar Spark Plugs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Fuel Selection – 6.4L Engine    | 89 Octane Recommended - 87 Octane Acceptable, 0-15% Ethanol.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**CAUTION!**

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.
- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.



## Chassis

| Component                                                                                              | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Automatic Transmission (6.4L Engine with 66RFE Transmission) (For Diesel Engine See Diesel Supplement) | Use only ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid. Failure to use ATF+4 fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission. We recommend Mopar ATF+4 fluid. |
| Automatic Transmission (6.4L Engine with AS66RC Transmission)                                          | Use only Mopar ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.         |
| Transfer Case                                                                                          | We recommend you use Mopar BW44-44 Transfer Case Fluid.                                                                                                              |
| Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)                                                                  | We recommend you use GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763). Limited slip additive is not required for Limited-Slip Rear Axles.                                         |
| Brake Master Cylinder                                                                                  | We recommend you use Mopar DOT 3 and SAE J1703. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable.                                                     |
| Power Steering Reservoir                                                                               | We recommend you use Mopar Power Steering Fluid +4, Mopar ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid.                                                                        |



# MULTIMEDIA

## CONTENTS

|                                                                                   |     |                                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ UCONNECT SYSTEMS . . . . .                                                      | 443 | □ Regulatory And Safety Information . . . . .           | 486 |
| ■ DRAG & DROP MENU BAR . . . . .                                                  | 443 | ■ UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS . . . . .       | 488 |
| ■ CYBERSECURITY . . . . .                                                         | 444 | □ Introducing Uconnect . . . . .                        | 488 |
| ■ UCONNECT SETTINGS . . . . .                                                     | 446 | □ Get Started . . . . .                                 | 489 |
| □ Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 3 Personal Settings . . . . .         | 447 | □ Basic Voice Commands . . . . .                        | 490 |
| □ Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Personal Settings . . . . . | 465 | □ Radio . . . . .                                       | 492 |
| ■ STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                           | 484 | □ Media . . . . .                                       | 494 |
| □ Radio Operation. . . . .                                                        | 484 | □ Phone . . . . .                                       | 496 |
| □ Media Mode . . . . .                                                            | 484 | □ Voice Text Reply . . . . .                            | 498 |
| □ CD Player — If Equipped . . . . .                                               | 485 | □ Climate (4C/4C NAV) . . . . .                         | 499 |
| ■ IPOD/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .                                    | 485 | □ Navigation (4C NAV) . . . . .                         | 499 |
| ■ RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE PHONES . . . . .                                     | 486 | □ SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV) — If Equipped . . . . . | 500 |
|                                                                                   |     | □ Register (4C/4C NAV) . . . . .                        | 501 |

|                                          |     |                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------|-----|
| □ Mobile App (4C/4C NAV) . . . . .       | 501 | □ Apple CarPlay — If Equipped. . . . . | 505 |
| □ SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV). . . . . | 502 | □ General Information . . . . .        | 506 |
| □ Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped . . . . . | 503 | □ Additional Information. . . . .      | 506 |
| □ Using Do Not Disturb . . . . .         | 503 | ■ CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE . . . . .    | 507 |
| □ Android Auto — If Equipped . . . . .   | 504 |                                        |     |

## UCONNECT SYSTEMS

For detailed information about your Uconnect system, refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

**NOTE:** Uconnect screen images are for illustration purposes only and may not reflect exact software for your vehicle.

### DRAG & DROP MENU BAR

The Uconnect features and services in the main menu bar are easily changed for your convenience. Simply follow these steps:



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Main Menu

1. Press the "Apps"  button to open the App screen.
2. Press and hold, then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

The new shortcut will now be an active App/shortcut on the main menu bar.

**CYBERSECURITY**

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software (such as Uconnect software) is installed.

**WARNING!**

- It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
- **ONLY** insert media (e.g., USB, SD card, or CD) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.
- As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.

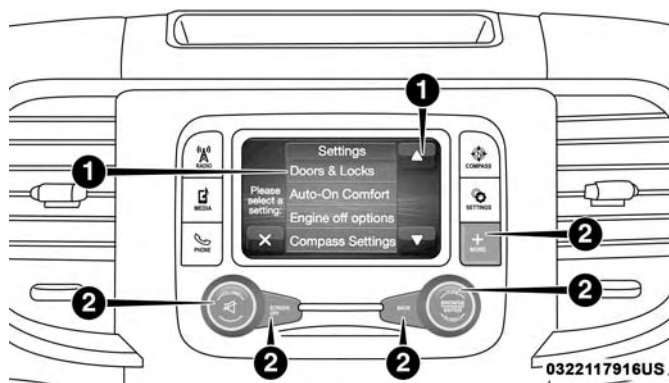
**NOTE:**

- FCA US LLC or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.
- To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:
  - Routinely check [www.driveuconnect.com/support/software-update.html](http://www.driveuconnect.com/support/software-update.html) (U.S. Residents) or [www.driveuconnect.ca](http://www.driveuconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents) to learn about available Uconnect software updates.
  - Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones, USBs, CDs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent. For further information, refer to “Data Collection & Privacy” in your Uconnect Owner’s Manual Supplement or “Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel”.

## UCONNECT SETTINGS

The Uconnect system uses a combination of buttons on the touchscreen and buttons on the faceplate located on the center of the instrument panel that allows you to access and change the customer programmable features. Many features can vary by vehicle.



**Uconnect 3 Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate**

- 1 — Uconnect Buttons On The Touchscreen
- 2 — Uconnect Buttons On The Faceplate



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate**

- 1 — Uconnect Buttons On The Touchscreen
- 2 — Uconnect Buttons On The Faceplate



## Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 3 Personal Settings

Push the MORE or SETTINGS button on the faceplate, then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen (if equipped) to display the settings menu screen. In this mode the Uconnect system allows you to access programmable features that may be equipped such as Display, Units, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort (if equipped), Engine Off Options, Trailer Brake, Audio, Compass Settings, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup (if equipped), Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data and System Information.

**NOTE:** Only one category may be selected at a time.

When making a selection, press the button on the touchscreen to enter the desired mode. Once in the desired mode, press and release the preferred setting until the button is highlighted. Once the setting is complete, either press the back arrow or the “Done” button on the touchscreen or the Back button on the faceplate to return to the previous menu. Pressing the Up or Down Arrow buttons on the touchscreen on the right side of the screen will allow you to toggle up or down through the list of available settings.

**NOTE:** All settings should be changed with the ignition in the RUN position.

Display

After pressing the “Display” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available.

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options         |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|
| Display Mode                                                                                                                                       | Auto                       | Manual |
| Set Language                                                                                                                                       | English, Français, Español |        |
| Touchscreen Beep                                                                                                                                   | On                         | Off    |
| Fuel Saver Display                                                                                                                                 | On                         | Off    |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Fuel Saver Display” feature will allow you to enable fuel saver mode and will be displayed in the instrument cluster display. |                            |        |

Units — If Equipped

After pressing “Units” on the touchscreen, the following will be available:

| Setting Name | Selectable Options |        |
|--------------|--------------------|--------|
| Units        | US                 | Metric |

**Voice**

After pressing the “Voice” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name          | Selectable Options |           |       |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------|-------|
| Voice Response Length | Brief              | Detailed  |       |
| Show Command List     | Always             | With Help | Never |

**Clock & Date**

After pressing the “Clock & Date” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|
| Set Time                                                                                                                                           | 12 hour            | 24 hour    |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>Within the “Set Time” feature, press the corresponding arrow above and below the current time to adjust, then select “AM” or “PM.” |                    |            |
| Set Date                                                                                                                                           | Up Arrow           | Down Arrow |

## Safety/Assistance

After pressing the “Safety/Assistance” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Selectable Options |                 |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------|
| ParkSense — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Sound Only         | Sound & Display |      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The ParkSense system scans for objects behind the vehicle when the transmission gear selector is in REVERSE and the vehicle speed is less than 7 mph (11 km/h). It provides an alert (audible and/or visual) to indicate the proximity to other objects.                                                                                                                                                        |                    |                 |      |
| Front ParkSense Chime Volume                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Low                | Med             | High |
| Rear ParkSense Chime Volume — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Low                | Med             | High |
| Tilt Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | On                 | Off             |      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Tilt Mirrors In Reverse” feature is selected, the exterior side-view mirrors tilt downward when the ignition is in the RUN position and the transmission gear selector is in the REVERSE position. The mirrors move back to their previous position when the transmission is shifted out of REVERSE.                                                                                                  |                    |                 |      |
| ParkView Backup Camera Active Guidelines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | On                 | Off             |      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera Active Guidelines that allows you to see active guidelines over the ParkView Back up camera display whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE. The image is displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to “check entire surroundings” across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note disappears. |                    |                 |      |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Selectable Options |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>ParkView Backup Camera Delay</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned OFF), the rear camera mode is exited and the navigation or audio screen appears again. When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned ON), the rear view image with dynamic grid lines is displayed for up to ten seconds after shifting out of REVERSE unless the forward vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (12 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK or the ignition is switched to the OFF position. |                    |     |
| <b>Rain Sensing Auto Wipers — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Rain Sensing Auto Wipers” feature is selected, the system automatically activates the windshield wipers if it senses moisture on the windshield.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                    |     |
| <b>Hill Start Assist — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Hill Start Assist” feature is selected, the Hill Start Assist (HSA) system becomes active.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                    |     |

## Lights

After pressing the “Lights” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                       | Selectable Options |        |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Headlight Off Delay                | 0 sec              | 30 sec |
|                                    | 60 sec             | 90 sec |
| Headlight Illumination On Approach | 0 sec              | 30 sec |
|                                    | 60 sec             | 90 sec |

### NOTE:

When the “Headlight Illumination On Approach” feature is selected, it allows the adjustment of the amount of time the headlights remain on when the doors are unlocked with the key fob.

|                                      |    |     |
|--------------------------------------|----|-----|
| Headlights With Wipers — If Equipped | On | Off |
| Auto Dim High Beams — If Equipped    | On | Off |
| Flash Lights With Lock               | On | Off |

### NOTE:

When the “Flash Lights With Lock” feature is selected, the exterior lights flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the key fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected.

## Doors & Locks

After pressing the “Doors & Locks” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Selectable Options |           |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Auto Door Locks — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                             | On                 | Off       |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Door Locks” feature is selected, all doors lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h).                                                                        |                    |           |           |
| Auto Unlock On Exit                                                                                                                                                                                                       | On                 | Off       |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Unlock On Exit” feature is selected, all doors unlock when the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is in the PARK or NEUTRAL position and the driver’s door is opened.                    |                    |           |           |
| Sound Horn With Lock                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Off                | 1st Press | 2nd Press |
| Remote Door Unlock                                                                                                                                                                                                        | All                | Driver    |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Remote Door Unlock” feature allows you to program your remote door locks to open “All doors” or only the “Driver door” with the first push of the key fob or grabbing the Passive Entry door handle. |                    |           |           |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Selectable Options |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Sound Horn With Remote Start</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Sound Horn With Remote Start” feature is selected, the horn sounds when the remote start is activated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                    |     |
| <b>Memory Linked To Fob — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The “Memory Linked To Fob” feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.</li> <li>• The seat returns to the memorized seat location if “Memory Linked To Fob” is set to (On) when the key fob is used to unlock the door.</li> </ul> |                    |     |
| <b>Passive Entry — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Passive Entry” feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle’s door(s) without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons. It automatically unlocks the doors when the outside door handle is grabbed.                                                                                                                            |                    |     |
| <b>Flash Lights With Lock</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Flash Lights With Lock” feature is selected, the exterior lights flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the key fob. This feature may be selected with or without the “Sound Horn With Lock” feature selected.                                                                                                                |                    |     |



## Auto Comfort Systems — If Equipped

After pressing the “Auto-On Comfort” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Selectable Options |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Auto-On Driver Heated/Ventilated Seat &amp; Steering Wheel With Vehicle Start — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto-On Driver Heated/Ventilated Seat & Steering Wheel With Vehicle Start” feature is selected the driver’s heated seat and heated steering wheel will automatically turn on when temperatures are below 40° F (4.4° C). When temperatures are above 80° F (26.7° C) the driver vented seat will turn on. |                    |     |

## Engine Off Options

After pressing the “Engine Off Options” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

10

| Setting Name                         | Selectable Options |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| <b>Easy Exit Seats — If Equipped</b> | On                 | Off    |
| <b>Headlight Off Delay</b>           | 0 sec              | 30 sec |
|                                      | 60 sec             | 90 sec |
| <b>Engine Off Power Delay</b>        | 0 sec              | 45 sec |
|                                      | 5 min              | 10 min |

## Suspension — If Equipped

After pressing the “Suspension” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                            | Selectable Options |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Sound Horn With Lower                                                                                                                                                                   | On                 | Off          |
| Flash Lights With Lower                                                                                                                                                                 | On                 | Off          |
| Auto Entry/Exit Suspension                                                                                                                                                              | On                 | Off          |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Entry/Exit Suspension” feature is selected, the vehicle automatically lowers from ride height position when vehicle shifted to park for easy entry/exit. |                    |              |
| Display Suspension Messages                                                                                                                                                             | All                | Warning Only |
| Automatic Aero Mode (1500 Model Only)                                                                                                                                                   | On                 | Off          |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Automatic Aero Mode” feature is selected, the Ride Height will automatically be adjusted depending on the vehicle speed.                                      |                    |              |
| Tire Jack Mode                                                                                                                                                                          | On                 | Off          |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When this feature is selected the air suspension system is disabled to prevent auto leveling of the suspension, while the vehicle is on a jack changing a tire.         |                    |              |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Selectable Options |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| Transport Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Transport Mode” feature is selected, the air suspension system is disabled to assist with flat bed towing.                                                                                                                                 |                    |     |
| Wheel Alignment Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Wheel Alignment Mode” feature prevents auto leveling of the air suspension while performing a wheel alignment service. Before performing a wheel alignment, this mode must be enabled. Refer to your authorized dealer for further information. |                    |     |

### Trailer Brake

After pressing the “Trailer Brake” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name       | Selectable Options |                |           |           |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|
| Trailer Select     | Trailer 1          | Trailer 2      | Trailer 3 | Trailer 4 |
| Trailer Brake Type | Light Electric     | Heavy Electric | Light EOH | Heavy EOH |

## Audio

After pressing the “Audio” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

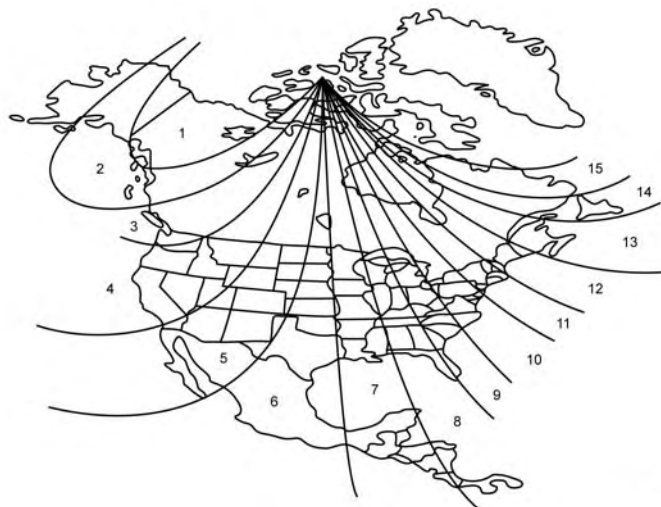
| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                            | Selectable Options |      |      |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------|------|-------|
| Balance/Fade                                                                                                                                                                                            | Front              | Back | Left | Right |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Balance/Fade” feature allows you to adjust the Balance and Fade settings. Press and drag the speaker icon or use the arrows to adjust, tap the “C” icon to readjust to the center. |                    |      |      |       |
| Equalizer                                                                                                                                                                                               | +                  |      | –    |       |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When in the “Equalizer” display you may adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble settings.                                                                                                       |                    |      |      |       |
| Speed Adjusted Volume                                                                                                                                                                                   | Off                | 1    | 2    | 3     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Speed Adjusted Volume” feature increases or decreases volume relative to vehicle speed.                                                                                            |                    |      |      |       |
| Surround Sound — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                            | On                 |      | Off  |       |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Surround Sound” feature provides simulated surround sound mode.                                                                                                                    |                    |      |      |       |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>AUX Volume Offset<br/>— If Equipped</b>                                                                                                         | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “AUX Volume Offset” feature provides the ability to tune the audio level for portable devices connected through the AUX input. |                    |     |
| <b>Loudness — If<br/>Equipped</b>                                                                                                                  | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Loudness” feature improves sound quality at lower volumes.                                                                    |                    |     |

## Compass Settings — If Equipped

After pressing the “Compass Settings” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Selectable Options |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Variance                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1                  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10  | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Compass Variance is the difference between Magnetic North and Geographic North. To compensate for the differences the variance should be set for the zone where the vehicle is driven, per the zone map. Once properly set, the compass will automatically compensate for the differences, and provide the most accurate compass heading.</li> <li>Keep magnetic materials away from the top of the instrument panel, such as iPod's, Mobile Phones, Laptops and Radar Detectors. This is where the compass module is located, and it can cause interference with the compass sensor, and it may give false readings.</li> </ul> |                    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |    |    |    |    |    |
| <b>Perform Compass Calibration</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | On                 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Off |    |    |    |    |    |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Press the “Calibration” button on the touchscreen to change this setting. This compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to manually reset the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic until it is calibrated. You may also calibrate the compass by pressing the “ON” button on the touchscreen and completing one or more 360-degree turns (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects). The compass will now function normally.                                                                                                                                                                                      |                    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |    |    |    |    |    |



0440083509

Compass Variance Zone Map

Phone/Bluetooth

After pressing the “Phone/Bluetooth” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Paired Phones                                                                                                                                                                      | List of Paired Phones |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Paired Phones” feature shows which phones are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner’s Manual Supplement. |                       |

SiriusXM Setup — If Equipped

After pressing the “SiriusXM Setup” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| Tune Start                                                                                                                                                                                                         | On                 | Off |
| Channel Skip                                                                                                                                                                                                       | List of Channels   |     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>SiriusXM can be programmed to exclude undesirable channels while scanning. To make your selection, press the “Channel Skip” button on the touchscreen, select the channels you would like to skip. |                    |     |



| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Selectable Options |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Subscription Info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Sirius ID          |
| <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>New vehicle purchasers or lessees will receive a free limited time subscription to SiriusXM Satellite Radio with your radio. Following the expiration of the free services, it will be necessary to access the information on the Subscription Information screen to re-subscribe.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the “Subscription Info” button on the touchscreen to access the Subscription Information screen.</li> <li>2. Write down the SIRIUS ID numbers for your receiver. To reactivate your service, either call the number listed on the screen or visit the provider online.</li> </ol> |                    |

### Restore Settings

After pressing the “Restore Settings” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Selectable Options |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Restore Settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes                | Cancel |
| <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>When the “Restore Settings” feature is selected it will reset the Display, Clock, Audio, and Radio Settings to their default settings. If “Yes” is selected a pop-up will appear asking “Are you sure you want to reset your settings to default?” select “Yes” to restore, or “Cancel” to exit.</p> |                    |        |

Clear Personal Data

After pressing the “Clear Personal Data Settings” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Selectable Options |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Clear Personal Data                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Yes                | Cancel |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When this feature is selected it will remove all personal data including Bluetooth devices and presets. If “Yes” is selected a pop-up will appear asking “Are you sure you want to clear all personal data?” select “Yes” to Clear, or “Cancel” to exit. |                    |        |

System Information

After pressing the “System Information” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Selectable Options                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| System Information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | System Software Information Screen |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “System Information” feature is selected, a “System Software Information” screen will appear, displaying the system software version. You can also update your maps with a USB device. Please see an authorized dealer for further information. |                                    |

## Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Personal Settings

Press the “Apps” button on the touchscreen then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen to display the settings menu screen. In this mode the Uconnect system allows you to access programmable features that may be equipped such as Display, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort (if equipped), Engine Off Options, Trailer Brake, Audio, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup (if equipped), Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data and System Information.

**NOTE:** Only one category may be selected at a time.

When making a selection, press the button on the touchscreen to enter the desired mode. Once in the desired mode, press and release the preferred setting until a

check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Once the setting is complete, either press the back arrow button on the touchscreen or the Back button on the faceplate to return to the previous menu or press the “X” button on the touchscreen to close out of the settings screen. Pressing the Up or Down Arrow buttons on the touchscreen on the right side of the screen will allow you to toggle up or down through the list of available settings.

**NOTE:** All settings should be changed with the ignition in the RUN position.

### Language

After pressing the “Language” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name | Selectable Options |          |         |
|--------------|--------------------|----------|---------|
| Set Language | English            | Français | Español |

Display

After pressing the “Display” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Selectable Options |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Display Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Auto               | Manual |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When Day or Night is selected for the Display Mode, the usage of the Parade Mode feature will cause the radio to activate the Display Brightness Day control even though the headlights are on. |                    |        |
| Display Brightness With Headlights ON                                                                                                                                                                           | +                  | –      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>To make changes to the “Display Brightness with Headlights ON” setting, the headlights must be on and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the “party” or “parade” positions.              |                    |        |
| Display Brightness With Headlights OFF                                                                                                                                                                          | +                  | –      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>To make changes to the “Display Brightness with Headlights OFF” setting, the headlights must be off and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the “party” or “parade” positions.            |                    |        |

| Setting Name                                        | Selectable Options    |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------|
| Set Theme                                           | Pre-configured Themes |        |
| Units                                               | US                    | Metric |
| Touchscreen Beep                                    | On                    | Off    |
| Navigation Turn-By-Turn<br>In Cluster — If Equipped | On                    | Off    |
| Controls Screen Time-Out<br>— If Equipped           | On                    | Off    |
| Fuel Saver Display in<br>Cluster — If Equipped      | On                    | Off    |

## Voice

After pressing the “Voice” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name          | Selectable Options |               |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Voice Response Length | Brief              | Detailed      |
| Show Command List     | Never              | w/Help Always |

Clock

After pressing the “Clock & Date” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                 | Selectable Options |       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------|
| Sync Time With GPS — If Equipped                                                                                             | On                 | Off   |
| Set Time Hours                                                                                                               | –                  | +     |
| Set Time Minutes                                                                                                             | –                  | +     |
| Time Format                                                                                                                  | 12hrs              | 24hrs |
|                                                                                                                              | AM                 | PM    |
| Show Time In Status Bar — If Equipped                                                                                        | On                 | Off   |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Show Time In Status Bar” feature allows you to turn on or shut off the digital clock in the status bar. |                    |       |

## Camera

After pressing the “Camera” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Selectable Options |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| ParkView Backup Camera Delay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “ParkView Backup Camera Delay” setting determines whether or not the screen will display the rear view image with dynamic grid lines for up to ten seconds after the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE. This delay will be canceled if the vehicle’s speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK, or the ignition is switched to the OFF position.                      |                    |     |
| Active ParkView Backup Camera Guidelines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Active ParkView Backup Camera Guidelines” feature overlays the Rear Backup Camera image with active, or dynamic, grid lines to help illustrate the width of the vehicle and its project back up path, based on the steering wheel position when the option is checked. A dashed center line overlay indicates the center of the vehicle to assist with parking or aligning to a hitch/receiver. |                    |     |

## Safety & Driving Assistance

After pressing the “Safety & Driving Assistance” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Selectable Options |                 |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------|
| ParkSense                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Sound              | Sound & Display |      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The Rear Park Assist system will scan for objects behind the vehicle when the transmission gear selector is in REVERSE and the vehicle speed is less than 7 mph (11 km/h).                                                                                                                                                   |                    |                 |      |
| Front ParkSense Chime Volume                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Low                | Med             | High |
| Rear ParkSense Chime Volume                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Low                | Med             | High |
| Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | On                 | Off             |      |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse” feature is selected, the outside side-view mirrors will tilt downward when the ignition is in the RUN position and the transmission gear selector is in the REVERSE position. The mirrors will move back to their previous position when the transmission is shifted out of REVERSE. |                    |                 |      |



| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                   | Selectable Options |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Rain Sensing Auto Wipers<br/>— If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                              | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Rain Sensing Auto Wipers” feature is selected, the system will automatically activate the windshield wipers if it senses moisture on the windshield. |                    |     |
| <b>Hill Start Assist — If<br/>Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                     | On                 | Off |

### Mirrors & Wipers

After pressing the “Mirror and Wipers” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                  | Selectable Options |     |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Headlights with Wipers</b> | On                 | Off |

Lights

After pressing the “Lights” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Selectable Options |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| Headlight Off Delay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | +                  | –   |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Headlight Off Delay” feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle.                                                                                                                                       |                    |     |
| Headlight Illumination On Approach                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | +                  | –   |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Headlight Illumination On Approach” feature is selected, the headlights will activate and remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when the doors are unlocked with the key fob.                                                                                                                |                    |     |
| Headlights With Wipers — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Headlights With Wipers” feature is selected, and the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the headlights will turn on approximately ten seconds after the wipers are turned on. The headlights will also turn off when the wipers are turned off if they were turned on by this feature. |                    |     |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Auto Dim High Beams — If Equipped</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                           | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Dim High Beams” feature is selected, the high beam headlights will deactivate automatically under certain conditions.                                                                                               |                    |     |
| <b>Flash Lights With Lock</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Flash Lights With Lock” feature is selected, the exterior lamps will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the key fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. |                    |     |
| <b>Steering Directed Lights</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Steering Directed Lights” feature is selected, the headlights turn with the direction of the steering wheel.                                                                                                             |                    |     |

## Doors & Locks

After pressing the “Doors & Locks” button on the touch-screen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Selectable Options |           |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Auto Door Locks — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | On                 | Off       |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Door Locks” feature is selected, all doors lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h).                                                                                                             |                    |           |           |
| Auto Unlock On Exit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | On                 | Off       |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Auto Unlock On Exit” feature is selected, all doors unlock when the vehicle is stopped and the transmission is in the PARK or NEUTRAL position and the driver’s door is opened.                                                      |                    |           |           |
| Flash Lights With Lock                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | On                 | Off       |           |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Flash Lights With Lock” feature is selected, the front and rear turn signals flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the key fob. This feature may be selected with or without the “Sound Horn With Lock” feature selected. |                    |           |           |
| Sound Horn With Lock                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Off                | 1st Press | 2nd Press |
| Sound Horn With Remote Start                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | On                 | Off       |           |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| 1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Driver Door        | All Doors |
| <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When “1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks: Driver Door” is selected, only the driver’s door unlocks on the first press of the key fob unlock button. You must push the key fob unlock button twice to unlock the passenger’s doors.</li> <li>When “All Doors” is selected, all of the doors unlock on the first push of the key fob unlock button.</li> <li>If the vehicle is programmed “1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks: All Doors”, all doors will unlock no matter which Passive Entry equipped door handle is grasped. If “1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks: Driver Door” is programmed, only the driver’s door will unlock when the driver’s door is grasped.</li> <li>With Passive Entry, if “1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks: Driver Door” is programmed pushing the handle more than once only results in the driver’s door opening. If “Driver Door” is selected, once the driver’s door is opened, the interior door lock/unlock switch can be used to unlock all doors (or use key fob).</li> </ul> |                    |           |
| Passive Entry — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | On                 | Off       |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Passive Entry” feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle’s door(s) without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                    |           |
| Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob — If Equipped                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | On                 | Off       |
| <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The “Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob” feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.</li> <li>The seats return to the memorized seat location (if “Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob” is set to on) when the key fob is used to unlock the door.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                    |           |

Engine Off Options

After pressing the “Engine Off Options” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Selectable Options |   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Engine Off Power Delay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | +                  | – |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Engine Off Power Delay” feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, Uconnect phone system (if equipped), power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to ten minutes after the ignition is cycled to OFF. Opening either front door will cancel this feature. |                    |   |
| Headlight Off Delay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | +                  | – |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Headlight Off Delay” feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle.                                                                                                                                              |                    |   |

## Air Suspension — If Equipped

After pressing the “Suspension” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Selectable Options |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| Sound Horn With Lower                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | On                 | Off     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Sound Horn With Lower” feature is selected, a short horn sound will occur when the key fob remote lower button is pushed.                                                                                                              |                    |         |
| Flash Lights With Lower                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | On                 | Off     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Flash Lights With Lower” feature is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the key fob remote lower button is pressed twice. This feature may be selected with or without the Sound Horn on Lower feature selected. |                    |         |
| Suspension Display Messages                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | All                | Warning |
| Automatic Aero Mode (1500 Model Only)                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | On                 | Off     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Automatic Aero Mode” feature is selected, the Ride Height will automatically be adjusted depending on the vehicle speed.                                                                                                               |                    |         |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                              | Selectable Options |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Tire Jack Mode</b>                                                                                                                                     | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Tire Jack Mode” feature is selected, the air suspension system is disabled to assist with changing a spare tire.                |                    |     |
| <b>Transport Mode</b>                                                                                                                                     | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Transport Mode” feature is selected, the air suspension system lowers and then disables to assist with flat bed towing.         |                    |     |
| <b>Wheel Alignment Mode</b>                                                                                                                               | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>Before performing a wheel alignment, the “Wheel Alignment Mode” must be enabled. Refer to your authorized dealer for further information. |                    |     |



## Trailer

After pressing the “Trailer Brake” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name              | Selectable Options |                |           |           |
|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>Trailer Select</b>     | Trailer 1          | Trailer 2      | Trailer 3 | Trailer 4 |
| <b>Trailer Brake Type</b> | Light Electric     | Heavy Electric | Light EOH | Heavy EOH |

## Audio

After pressing the “Audio” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                            | Selectable Options |      |      |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------|------|-------|
| Balance/Fade                                                                                                                                                                                            | Front              | Back | Left | Right |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Balance/Fade” feature allows you to adjust the Balance and Fade settings. Press and drag the speaker icon or use the arrows to adjust, tap the “C” icon to readjust to the center. |                    |      |      |       |
| Equalizer                                                                                                                                                                                               | +                  |      | –    |       |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When in the “Equalizer” display you may adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble settings.                                                                                                       |                    |      |      |       |

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                       | Selectable Options |   |     |   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---|-----|---|
| Speed Adjusted Volume                                                                                                                              | Off                | 1 | 2   | 3 |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Speed Adjusted Volume” feature increases or decreases volume relative to vehicle speed.                                       |                    |   |     |   |
| Surround Sound — If Equipped                                                                                                                       | On                 |   | Off |   |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Surround Sound” feature provides simulated surround sound mode.                                                               |                    |   |     |   |
| AUX Volume Offset — If Equipped                                                                                                                    | On                 |   | Off |   |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “AUX Volume Offset” feature provides the ability to tune the audio level for portable devices connected through the AUX input. |                    |   |     |   |
| Auto Play                                                                                                                                          | On                 |   | Off |   |

## Phone/Bluetooth Settings

After pressing the “Phone/Bluetooth Settings” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Selectable Options                      |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Do Not Disturb                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | List of Settings                        |     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>Press “Do Not Disturb” to access the available settings. The following settings are: Auto Reply (both, text, call), Auto Reply Message (custom, default) and Custom Auto Reply Message (create message).                |                                         |     |
| Paired Phones and Audio Devices                                                                                                                                                                                                         | List Of Paired Phones and Audio Sources |     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Paired Phones and Audio Devices” feature shows which phones and audio sources are paired to the Phone and Audio Sources Settings system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner’s Manual Supplement. |                                         |     |
| Smartphone Projection Manager                                                                                                                                                                                                           | On                                      | Off |

### SiriusXM Setup — If Equipped

After pressing the “SiriusXM Setup” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Selectable Options |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| Tune Start                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | On                 | Off |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>The “Tune Start” feature begins playing the current song from the beginning when you tune to a music channel using one of the twelve presets, so you can enjoy the complete song. This feature occurs the first time the preset is selected during that current song. Tune Start works in the background, so you will not even realize it’s on, except that you will miss the experience of joining your favorite song with only a few seconds left to play. |                    |     |
| Channel Skip                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | List of Channels   |     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>SiriusXM can be programmed to designate a group of channels that are the most desirable to listen to or to exclude undesirable channels while scanning. This feature allows you to select the channels you would like to skip.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                    |     |
| Subscription Info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Sirius ID          |     |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>New vehicle purchasers or lessees will receive a free limited time subscription to SiriusXM Satellite Radio with your radio. Following the expiration of the free services, it will be necessary to access the information on the Subscription Information screen to re-subscribe.                                                                                                                                                                           |                    |     |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the “Subscription Info” button on the touchscreen to access the Subscription Information screen.</li><li>2. Write down the Sirius ID numbers for your receiver. To reactivate your service, either call the number listed on the screen or visit the provider online.</li></ol> SiriusXM Travel Link is a separate subscription.                                                                                              |                    |     |

## Reset Settings

After pressing the “Reset Settings” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                              | Selectable Options |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| Reset App Drawer                                                                                                                          | OK                 | Cancel |
| Restore Settings                                                                                                                          | OK                 | Cancel |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Restore Settings” feature is selected it will reset all settings to their default settings.                     |                    |        |
| Clear Personal Data                                                                                                                       | Yes                | Cancel |
| <b>NOTE:</b> When the “Clear Personal Data” feature is selected it will remove all personal data including Bluetooth devices and presets. |                    |        |

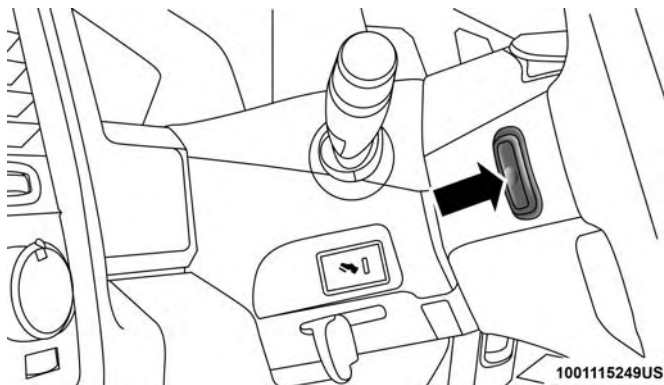
## System Information

After pressing the “System Information” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

| Setting Name                                                                                                                                                 | Selectable Options                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Software License                                                                                                                                             | System Software Information Screen |
| <b>NOTE:</b><br>When the “Software License” feature is selected, a “System Software Information” screen will appear, displaying the system software version. |                                    |

## STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the back surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



Steering Wheel Audio Controls (Rearview Of Steering Wheel)

The right hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. Pushing the top of the switch will increase the volume, and pushing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume.

- Pushing the center button will make the radio switch between the various modes available (AM/FM/SXM or Media etc.).

The left hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. The function of the left hand control is different depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left hand control operation in each mode.

### Radio Operation

Pushing the top of the switch will SEEK up for the next listenable station and pushing the bottom of the switch will SEEK down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left-hand control will tune to the next preset station that you have programmed in the radio preset button.

### Media Mode

Pushing the top of the switch once goes to the next track on the selected media (AUX/USB/Bluetooth). Pushing the bottom of the switch once goes to the beginning of the current track, or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within eight seconds after the current track begins to play.

## CD Player — If Equipped

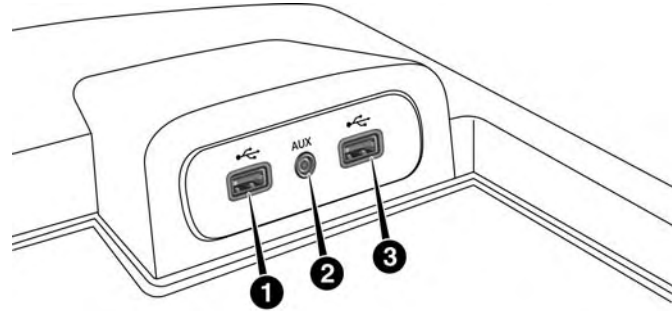
Pushing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pushing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within eight seconds after the current track begins to play.

If you push the switch up or down twice, it plays the second track. If you push the switch up or down three times, it will play the third, etc.

## IPOD/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

Located inside the center console upper lid, this feature allows an iPod or external USB device to be plugged into the USB port.

iPod control supports the following: iPod/iPod classic, iPod mini, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, iPod touch, and iPhone devices. Some iPod software versions may not fully support the iPod control features. Please visit Apple's website for software updates.



1004119259US

**Center Console USB/AUX Media Hub**

- 1 — USB Port #1
- 2 — Aux Jack
- 3 — USB Port #2

For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement or visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).

## **RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE PHONES**

Under certain conditions, the mobile phone being on in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the mobile phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily “clear” by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during mobile phone operation when not using Uconnect (if equipped).

### **Regulatory And Safety Information**

#### **USA/CANADA**

##### **Exposure to Radio Frequency Radiation**

The radiated output power of the internal wireless radio is far below the FCC and IC radio frequency exposure limits. Nevertheless, the wireless radio will be used in such a manner that the radio is 20 cm or further from the human body.

The internal wireless radio operates within guidelines found in radio frequency safety standards and recommendations, which reflect the consensus of the scientific community.

The radio manufacturer believes the internal wireless radio is safe for use by consumers. The level of energy emitted is far less than the electromagnetic energy emitted by wireless devices such as mobile phones. However, the use of wireless radios may be restricted in some situations or environments, such as aboard airplanes. If you are unsure of restrictions, you are encouraged to ask for authorization before turning on the wireless radio.

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**NOTE:**

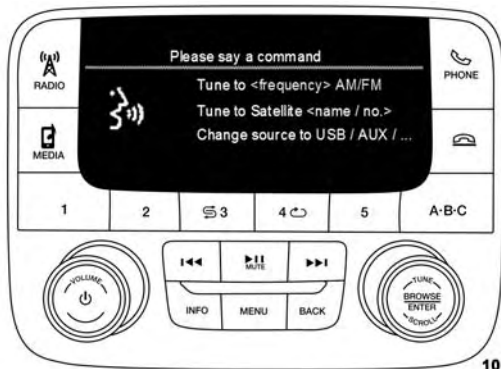
- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
- If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
  1. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
  2. Consult an authorized dealer or an experienced radio technician for help.

## Uconnect VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS

### Introducing Uconnect

Start using Uconnect Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect system.

If you see the NAV icon on the bottom bar, or in the Apps menus, of your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect 4C NAV system. If not, you have a Uconnect 4C system.



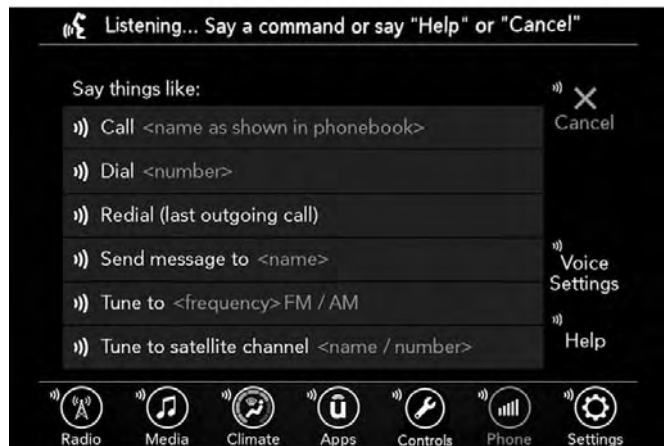
1007127576US

Uconnect 3.0



0322117913US

Uconnect 3



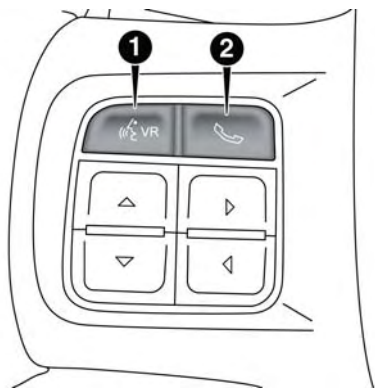
Uconnect 4C/4C NAV

## Get Started

All you need to control your Uconnect system with your voice are the buttons on your steering wheel.

1. Visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) to check mobile device and feature compatibility and to find phone pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind noise and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is located in the headliner and aimed at the driver.
4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.

5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.



1007126392US

Uconnect Voice Command Buttons

- 1 — Push To Begin Radio Or Media Functions  
2 — Push To Initiate, Answer, End A Phone Call, Or Send/Receive A Text

## Basic Voice Commands

The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect system.

Push the VR button . After the beep, say:

- “**Cancel**” to stop a current voice session
- “**Help**” to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
- “**Repeat**” to listen to the system prompts again

Notice the visual cues that inform you of your voice recognition system’s status. Cues appear on the top of the touchscreen.

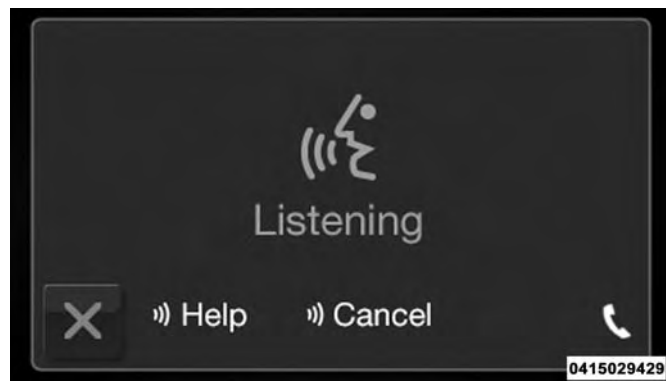
Please say a command



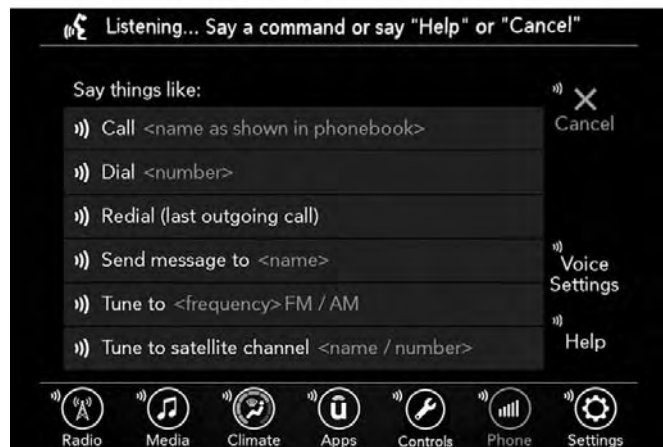
Tune to <frequency> AM/FM

Tune to Satellite <name / no.>

Change source to USB / AUX / ...



Uconnect 3



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV

## Radio

Use your voice to quickly get to the AM, FM or SiriusXM Satellite Radio stations you would like to hear. (Subscription or included SiriusXM Satellite Radio trial required.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say:

- “ **Tune to** ninety-five-point-five FM”
- “ **Tune to Satellite Channel Hits 1**”

**TIP:** At any time, if you are not sure of what to say or want to learn a Voice Command, push the VR button  and say “ **Help.**” The system provides you with a list of commands.

Please say a command



Tune to <frequency> AM/FM

Tune to Satellite <name / no.>

Change source to USB / AUX / ...

0415077826

Uconnect 3.0



Uconnect 3



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV

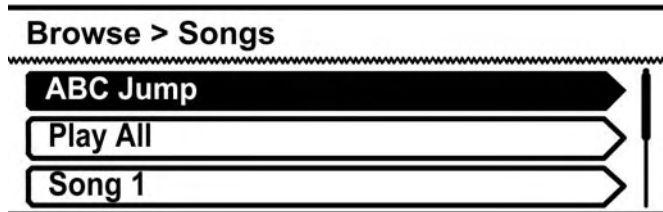
## Media

Uconnect offers connections via USB, Bluetooth and auxiliary ports (If Equipped). Voice operation is only available for connected USB and AUX devices. (Remote CD player optional and not available on all vehicles.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands and follow the prompts to switch your media source or choose an artist.

- “ **Change source to Bluetooth**”
- “ **Change source to AUX**”
- “ **Change source to USB**”
- “ **Play artist** Beethoven”; “ **Play album** Greatest Hits”; “ **Play song** Moonlight Sonata”; “ **Play genre** Classical”

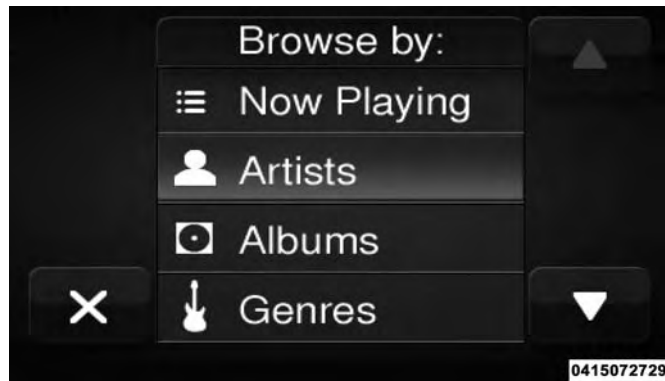
**TIP:** Press the Browse button on the touchscreen to see all of the music on your USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.



0416102327NA

Uconnect 3.0





Uconnect 3



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV

## Phone

Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect. When the Phonebook button is illuminated on your touchscreen, your system is ready. Check UconnectPhone.com for mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “ **Call** John Smith”
- “ **Dial** 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts”
- “ **Redial** (call previous outgoing phone number)”
- “ **Call back** (call previous incoming phone number)”

**TIP:** When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button  and say “**Call,**” then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say “**Call** John Smith **work.**”

Please say a command



Listen

Ignore

Call

0701073934

Uconnect 3.0



Uconnect 3



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Phone

## Voice Text Reply

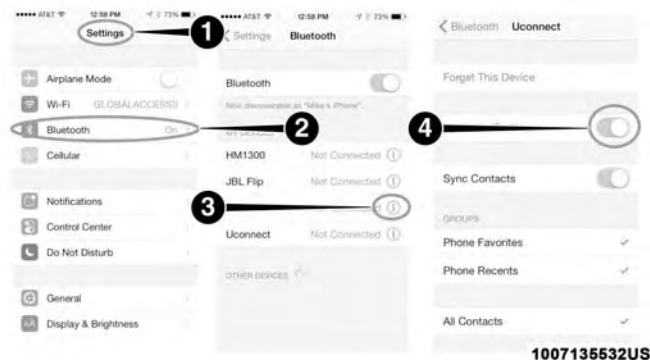
Uconnect announces **incoming** text messages. Push the Phone button  and say “**Listen.**” (Must have compatible mobile phone paired to Uconnect system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the Phone button . After the beep, say: “**Reply.**”
2. Listen to the Uconnect prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

| PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES |                       |                                        |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Yes.                                   | Stuck in traffic.     | See you later.                         |
| No.                                    | Start without me.     | I'll be late.                          |
| Okay.                                  | Where are you?        | I will be<br><number><br>minutes late. |
| Call me.                               | Are you there yet?    |                                        |
| I'll call you later.                   | I need directions.    | See you in<br><number> of<br>minutes.  |
| I'm on my way.                         | Can't talk right now. | Thanks.                                |
| I'm lost.                              |                       |                                        |

**TIP:** Your mobile phone must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).

Apple iPhone iOS 6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these four simple steps:



### iPhone Notification Settings

- 1 — Select “Settings”
- 2 — Select “Bluetooth”
- 3 — Select The (i) For The Paired Vehicle
- 4 — Turn On “Show Notifications”

**TIP:** Voice Text Reply is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.

### Climate (4C/4C NAV)

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “Set driver temperature to 70 degrees”
- “Set passenger temperature to 70 degrees”

**TIP:** Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel if equipped.



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Climate

### Navigation (4C NAV)

The Uconnect navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you do not know exactly how to get to where you want to go.

1. To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “Find address 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan.”

2. Then follow the system prompts.

**TIP:** To start a POI search, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “ **Find nearest** coffee shop.”



Uconnect 4C NAV Navigation

## SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV) — If Equipped

### CAUTION!

Some SiriusXM Guardian services, including SOS Call and Roadside Assistance Call will NOT work without an operable LTE (voice/data) or 3G or 4G (data) network connection compatible with your device.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the SiriusXM Guardian services in the next section of this guide. To register with SiriusXM Guardian, press the Apps button on the 8.4-inch touchscreen to get started.

**NOTE:** SiriusXM Guardian is available only on equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii, and Canada. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.

 SOS Call

 Theft Alarm Notification

 Remote Door Lock/Unlock

-  Send & Go
-  Vehicle Finder
-  Stolen Vehicle Assistance
-  Remote Vehicle Start\*\*
-  Remote Horn & Lights
-  Roadside Assistance Call

Vehicle Health Reports\*\*

Vehicle Health Alert\*\*

Performance Pages Plus\*\*

\*\*If vehicle is equipped.

### Register (4C/4C NAV)

To unlock the full potential of SiriusXM Guardian in your vehicle, you must activate your SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. Press the Apps icon on the bottom of your in-vehicle touchscreen.
2. Select the Activate Services icon from your list of apps.

3. Select “Customer Care” to speak with a SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care agent who will activate services in your vehicle, or select “Enter Email” to activate on the web.

For further information:

- U.S. residents visit: [siriusxm.com/guardian](http://siriusxm.com/guardian)
- Canadian residents visit: [siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://siriusxm.ca/guardian)

### Mobile App (4C/4C NAV)

You’re only a few steps away from using remote commands and playing your favorite music in your car.



Mobile App

To use the Uconnect App:

- Download the Uconnect App to your mobile device.
- Press the Info button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app for Vehicle Info.
- Press the Remote button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app to Lock/Unlock, Remote Start, and activate your horn and lights remotely.
- Press the Location button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your vehicle's navigation system.
- Press the Settings button in the upper left corner of the app to bring up app settings and access the Assist Call Centers.

**NOTE:** For further information please visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com)(U.S. Residents) or [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents).

### SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV)

Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5 - day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect 4C NAV system.

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “ Show fuel prices”
- “ Show 5 - day weather forecast”
- “ Show extended weather”

**TIP:** Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.



SiriusXM Travel Link



## Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped

Siri lets you use your voice to send text messages, select media, place phone calls and much more. Siri uses your natural language to understand what you mean and responds back to confirm your requests. The system is designed to keep your eyes on the road and your hands on the wheel by letting Siri help you perform useful tasks.

To enable Siri, push and hold, then release the Uconnect Voice Recognition (VR) button on the steering wheel. After you hear a double beep you can ask Siri to play podcasts and music, get directions, read text messages and many other useful requests.



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Siri Eyes Free Available

## Using Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

**NOTE:**

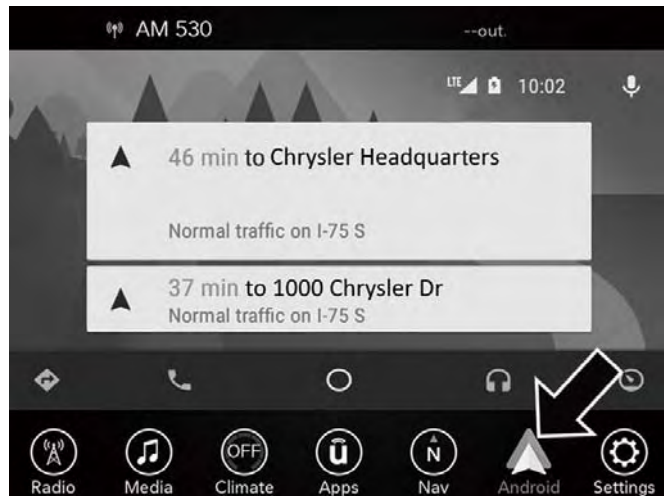
- Only the beginning of your custom message will be seen on the touchscreen.
- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that supporting Bluetooth MAP.

### **Android Auto — If Equipped**

**NOTE:** Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Android Auto features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Android Auto allows you to use your voice to interact with Android’s best-in-class speech technology through your vehicle’s voice recognition system, and use your smartphone’s data plan to project your Android powered smartphone and a number of its apps onto your Uconnect touchscreen. Connect your Android 5.0 (Lollipop), or higher, to one of the media USB ports, using the factory-provided USB cable, and press the new Android Auto icon that replaces your “Phone” icon on the main menu bar to begin Android Auto. Push and hold the VR button on the steering wheel, or press and hold the “Microphone” icon within Android Auto, to activate Android’s VR, which recognizes natural voice commands, to use a list of your smartphone’s features:

- Maps
- Music
- Phone
- Text Messages
- Additional Apps



### Android Auto On 8.4-inch Display

**NOTE:** Requires compatible smartphone running Android™ 5.0 Lollipop or higher and download app on Google Play. Android, Android Auto, and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc.

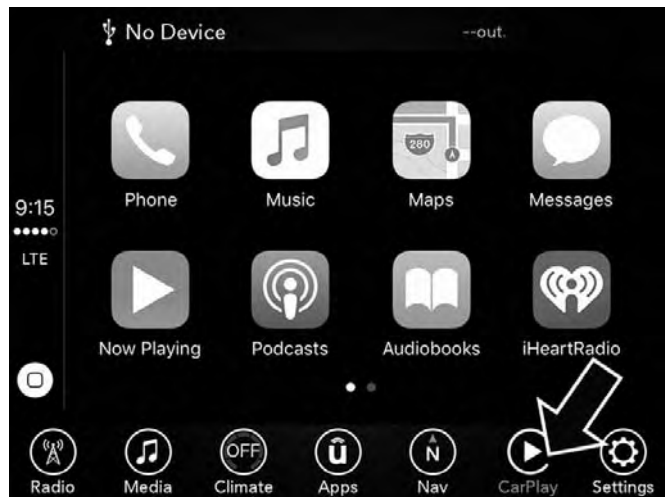
Refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for further information.

### Apple CarPlay — If Equipped

**NOTE:** Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Apple CarPlay features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Apple CarPlay allows you to use your voice to interact with Siri through your vehicle's voice recognition system, and use your smartphone's data plan to project your iPhone and a number of its apps onto your Uconnect touchscreen. Connect your iPhone 5, or higher, to one of the media USB ports, using the factory-provided Lightning cable, and press the new CarPlay icon that replaces your "Phone" icon on the main menu bar to begin Apple CarPlay. Press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel, or press and hold the "Home" button within Apple CarPlay, to activate Siri, which recognizes natural voice commands to use a list of your iPhone's features:

- Phone
- Music
- Messages
- Maps
- Additional Apps



### Apple CarPlay On 8.4-inch Display

**NOTE:** Requires compatible iPhone. See dealer for phone compatibility. Data plan rates apply. Vehicle user interface is a product of Apple®. Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Apple terms of use and privacy statements apply.

Refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for further information.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Additional Information

© 2018 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc.

### Uconnect System Support:

- U.S. residents visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com) or call: 1-877-855-8400(24 hours a day 7 days a week)
- Canadian residents visit [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca) or call: 1-800-465-2001(English) or 1-800-387-9983(French)

### SiriusXM Guardian services support:

- U.S. residents call:1-844-796-4827
- Canadian residents call:1-877-324-9091

## CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE

To keep a CD/DVD in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.
2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.
3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.
4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or anti-static sprays.
5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.

7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

**NOTE:** If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (e.g., scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc), oversized, or have protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.



# CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

## CONTENTS

---

|                                                                |     |                                                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ■ SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE . . . . . | 510 | □ Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY) . . . . . | 512 |
| □ Prepare For The Appointment . . . . .                        | 510 | □ Service Contract . . . . .                                                 | 512 |
| □ Prepare A List . . . . .                                     | 510 | ■ WARRANTY INFORMATION . . . . .                                             | 513 |
| □ Be Reasonable With Requests . . . . .                        | 510 | ■ MOPAR PARTS . . . . .                                                      | 513 |
| ■ IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE . . . . .                             | 510 | ■ REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . . . .                                         | 513 |
| □ FCA US LLC Customer Center . . . . .                         | 511 | □ In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. . . . .                       | 513 |
| □ FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center. . . . .                     | 511 | □ In Canada . . . . .                                                        | 514 |
| □ In Mexico Contact . . . . .                                  | 511 | ■ PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS . . . . .                                          | 514 |
| □ Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands. . . . .                 | 511 |                                                                              |     |

## **SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE**

### **Prepare For The Appointment**

If you are having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

### **Prepare A List**

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

### **Be Reasonable With Requests**

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

## **IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE**

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.



Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

#### **FCA US LLC Customer Center**

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (866) 726-4636

#### **FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center**

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French

#### **In Mexico Contact**

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

#### **Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands**

FCA Caribbean LLC

P.O. Box 191857

San Juan 00919-1857

Phone: (866) 726-4636

Fax: (787) 782-3345

## **Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)**

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

## **Service Contract**

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any

questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

**WARNING!**

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

**WARRANTY INFORMATION**

See the Warranty Information Booklet for the terms and provisions of FCA US LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

**MOPAR PARTS**

Mopar fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

**REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS****In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying FCA US LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, an authorized dealer or FCA US LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/>.

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, MasterCard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted.

### Service Manuals

These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing FCA US LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

## Diagnostic Procedure Manuals

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

### Owner's Manuals

These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific FCA US LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- 1-800-890-4038 (U.S.)
- 1-800-387-1143 (Canada)

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) (U.S.)

---

# INDEX

- Adding Engine Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . 387
- Adding Fuel . . . . . 293
- Additives, Fuel . . . . . 294, 432
- Adjust
  - Down . . . . . 44, 46
  - Forward . . . . . 44, 46
  - Rearward . . . . . 44, 46
  - Up . . . . . 44, 46
- Adjustable Pedals . . . . . 57
- Air Bag
  - Air Bag Operation . . . . . 202
  - Air Bag Warning Light . . . . . 199
  - Enhanced Accident Response . . . . . 208, 357
  - Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 357
  - If Deployment Occurs . . . . . 207
  - Knee Impact Bolsters . . . . . 203
  - Maintaining Your Air Bag System . . . . . 210
  - Maintenance . . . . . 210
  - Transporting Pets . . . . . 236
- Air Bag Light. . . . . 152, 199, 237
- Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter). . . . . 370
- Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . . 373
- Air Conditioner Refrigerant . . . . . 373, 374
- Air Conditioner System . . . . . 373
- Air Conditioning. . . . . 93
- Air Conditioning Filter . . . . . 96, 374
- Air Conditioning, Operating Tips . . . . . 95
- Air Filter . . . . . 370
- Air Pressure
  - Tires . . . . . 407
- Alarm
  - Panic . . . . . 22
  - Security Alarm . . . . . 32, 153
- Alterations/Modifications
  - Vehicle . . . . . 7
- Android Auto . . . . . 504
- Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . . 386
  - Capacities . . . . . 436
  - Disposal . . . . . 389
- Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 166
- Anti-Lock Warning Light . . . . . 159
- Apple CarPlay . . . . . 505
- Ashtray . . . . . 126
- Assist, Hill Start . . . . . 168
- Audio Systems (Radio). . . . . 443
- Auto Down Power Windows . . . . . 97
- Automatic Door Locks. . . . . 39
- Automatic Headlights . . . . . 71
- Automatic High Beams . . . . . 70
- Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) . . . . . 94

|                                                   |               |  |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|--|
| Automatic Transmission                            |               |  |
| Adding Fluid . . . . .                            | 393           |  |
| Fluid And Filter Changes . . . . .                | 394           |  |
| Fluid Level Check . . . . .                       | 391, 392      |  |
| Fluid Type . . . . .                              | 391, 439      |  |
| Shifting . . . . .                                | 252           |  |
| Special Additives . . . . .                       | 392           |  |
| Aux Cord . . . . .                                | 485           |  |
| Auxiliary Switches . . . . .                      | 127           |  |
| Axle Fluid . . . . .                              | 394, 395, 439 |  |
| Axle Lubrication . . . . .                        | 394, 395      |  |
| Back-Up . . . . .                                 | 290           |  |
| Back-Up Camera . . . . .                          | 290           |  |
| Battery . . . . .                                 | 154, 367      |  |
| Charging System Light . . . . .                   | 154           |  |
| Keyless Key Fob Replacement . . . . .             | 23            |  |
| Belts, Seat . . . . .                             | 237           |  |
| Body Builders Guide . . . . .                     | 7             |  |
| Body Mechanism Lubrication . . . . .              | 380           |  |
| B-Pillar Location . . . . .                       | 402           |  |
| Brake Assist System . . . . .                     | 168           |  |
| Brake Control System . . . . .                    | 167           |  |
| Brake Fluid . . . . .                             | 390, 439      |  |
| Brake System . . . . .                            | 390, 428      |  |
| Fluid Check . . . . .                             | 390           |  |
| Master Cylinder . . . . .                         | 390           |  |
| Parking . . . . .                                 | 249           |  |
| Warning Light . . . . .                           | 152           |  |
| Brake/Transmission Interlock . . . . .            | 252           |  |
| Bulb Replacement . . . . .                        | 327           |  |
| Bulbs, Light . . . . .                            | 240, 327      |  |
| Cab Top Clearance Lights . . . . .                | 332           |  |
| Camera . . . . .                                  | 290           |  |
| Camera, Rear . . . . .                            | 290           |  |
| Capacities, Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . . | 436           |  |
| Capacities, Fluid . . . . .                       | 436           |  |
| Caps, Filler                                      |               |  |
| Oil (Engine) . . . . .                            | 366, 370      |  |
| Power Steering . . . . .                          | 273           |  |
| Radiator (Coolant Pressure) . . . . .             | 388           |  |
| Carbon Monoxide Warning . . . . .                 | 237, 435      |  |
| Cargo Light . . . . .                             | 74            |  |
| Car Washes . . . . .                              | 423           |  |
| Cellular Phone . . . . .                          | 486           |  |
| Center High Mounted Stop Light . . . . .          | 330           |  |
| Center Seat Storage Compartment . . . . .         | 112           |  |
| Change Oil Indicator . . . . .                    | 139           |  |
| Changing A Flat Tire . . . . .                    | 341           |  |

|                                                       |          |                                             |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------------|----------|
| Chart, Tire Sizing . . . . .                          | 398      | Cooling System . . . . .                    | 386      |
| Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator Light). . . | 163      | Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .       | 387      |
| Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . . . .            | 236      | Coolant Capacity . . . . .                  | 436      |
| Checks, Safety . . . . .                              | 236      | Coolant Level . . . . .                     | 386, 389 |
| Child Restraint . . . . .                             | 211      | Disposal Of Used Coolant . . . . .          | 389      |
| Child Restraints                                      |          | Drain, Flush, And Refill . . . . .          | 386      |
| Booster Seats . . . . .                               | 215      | Inspection . . . . .                        | 389      |
| Child Seat Installation . . . . .                     | 226, 228 | Points To Remember . . . . .                | 389      |
| How To Stow An unused ALR Seat Belt . . . . .         | 224      | Pressure Cap . . . . .                      | 388      |
| Infant And Child Restraints . . . . .                 | 213      | Radiator Cap . . . . .                      | 388      |
| Locating The LATCH Anchorages . . . . .               | 220      | Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . | 386, 437 |
| Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children . . . . .      | 217      | Corrosion Protection . . . . .              | 422      |
| Older Children And Child Restraints . . . . .         | 214      | Cruise Light . . . . .                      | 161      |
| Seating Positions . . . . .                           | 216      | Cupholders . . . . .                        | 121      |
| Cigar Lighter . . . . .                               | 126      | Customer Assistance . . . . .               | 510      |
| Clean Air Gasoline . . . . .                          | 432      | Customer Programmable Features . . . . .    | 465      |
| Cleaning                                              |          | Cybersecurity . . . . .                     | 444      |
| Wheels . . . . .                                      | 416      | Daytime Running Lights . . . . .            | 69       |
| Climate Control . . . . .                             | 80       | Dealer Service . . . . .                    | 368      |
| Manual . . . . .                                      | 80       | Defroster, Rear Window . . . . .            | 80       |
| Cold Weather Operation . . . . .                      | 248      | Defroster, Windshield . . . . .             | 238      |
| Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance . . . . .               | 507      | Delay (Intermittent) Wipers . . . . .       | 78       |
| Compact Spare Tire . . . . .                          | 414      | Diagnostic System, Onboard . . . . .        | 161      |
| Contract, Service . . . . .                           | 512      | Differential, Limited-Slip . . . . .        | 270      |
| Cooling Pressure Cap (Radiator Cap) . . . . .         | 388      |                                             |          |



- Dipsticks
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . .392
  - Power Steering . . . . .273
- Disabled Vehicle Towing . . . . .354
- Disposal
  - Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . .389
- Disturb. . . . .503
- Door Ajar . . . . .155
- Door Ajar Light. . . . .155
- Door Locks
  - Automatic . . . . .39
- Doors. . . . .34
- Driver's Seat Back Tilt. . . . .41
- Driving
  - Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water . . . . .318
- Dual Rear Wheels. . . . .345, 419, 429
- Electrical Power Outlets. . . . .122
- Electric Brake Control System. . . . .167
  - Anti-Lock Brake System . . . . .166
  - Electronic Roll Mitigation . . . . .170, 175
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case. . . . .265
- Electronic Range Select (ERS) . . . . .258
- Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . .274
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . .171
- Electronic Throttle Control Warning Light . . . . .154
- Emergency Brake. . . . .249
- Emergency, In Case Of
  - Freeing Vehicle When Stuck . . . . .352
  - Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .322
  - Jacking . . . . .341
  - Jump Starting . . . . .347
- Emission Control System Maintenance. . . . .163
- Engine . . . . .366
  - Air Cleaner . . . . .370
  - Break-In Recommendations . . . . .248
  - Compartment Identification . . . . .366
  - Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .437
  - Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .237, 435
  - Fails To Start . . . . .247
  - Flooded, Starting . . . . .247
  - Fuel Requirements . . . . .432
  - Jump Starting . . . . .347
  - Oil . . . . .369, 437
  - Oil Filler Cap . . . . .366, 370
  - Oil Filter . . . . .370
  - Oil Selection . . . . .369
  - Oil Synthetic . . . . .370
  - Overheating . . . . .350

|                                              |          |
|----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Engine Oil Viscosity . . . . .               | 370      |
| Enhanced Accident Response Feature . . . . . | 208, 357 |
| Entry System, Illuminated . . . . .          | 77       |
| Ethanol . . . . .                            | 433      |
| Exhaust Gas Cautions . . . . .               | 237, 435 |
| Exhaust System . . . . .                     | 237, 384 |
| Exterior Lighting . . . . .                  | 68       |
| Exterior Lights . . . . .                    | 68, 240  |

#### Filters

|                               |          |
|-------------------------------|----------|
| Air Cleaner . . . . .         | 370      |
| Air Conditioning . . . . .    | 96, 374  |
| Engine Fuel . . . . .         | 437      |
| Engine Oil . . . . .          | 370, 437 |
| Engine Oil Disposal . . . . . | 370      |

#### Flashers

|                        |              |
|------------------------|--------------|
| Turn Signals . . . . . | 73, 160, 240 |
|------------------------|--------------|

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| Flash-To-Pass . . . . . | 71 |
|-------------------------|----|

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Flat Tire Stowage . . . . . | 346 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Fluid, Brake . . . . . | 439 |
|------------------------|-----|

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Fluid Capacities . . . . . | 436 |
|----------------------------|-----|

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Fluid Leaks . . . . . | 240 |
|-----------------------|-----|

#### Fluid Level Checks

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Automatic Transmission . . . . . | 392 |
| Brake . . . . .                  | 390 |

|                                     |          |
|-------------------------------------|----------|
| Power Steering . . . . .            | 273      |
| Fluids And Lubricants . . . . .     | 437      |
| Fog Lights . . . . .                | 73, 330  |
| Fold Flat Load Floor . . . . .      | 116      |
| Fold-Flat Seats . . . . .           | 41       |
| Four-Way Hazard Flasher . . . . .   | 322      |
| Four Wheel Drive . . . . .          | 261      |
| Freeing A Stuck Vehicle . . . . .   | 352      |
| Front Axle (Differential) . . . . . | 394      |
| Fuel . . . . .                      | 432      |
| Adding . . . . .                    | 293      |
| Additives . . . . .                 | 294, 432 |
| Clean Air . . . . .                 | 432      |
| Ethanol . . . . .                   | 433      |
| Filler Cap (Gas Cap) . . . . .      | 294      |
| Filter . . . . .                    | 437      |
| Gasoline . . . . .                  | 432      |
| Light . . . . .                     | 158      |
| Materials Added . . . . .           | 294, 432 |
| Methanol . . . . .                  | 433      |
| Octane Rating . . . . .             | 432      |
| Requirements . . . . .              | 432      |
| Tank Capacity . . . . .             | 436      |
| Fuses . . . . .                     | 333      |

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Garage Door Opener (HomeLink) . . . . .                              | 102 |
| Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) . . . . .                                  | 294 |
| Gasoline, Clean Air . . . . .                                        | 432 |
| Gasoline, Reformulated . . . . .                                     | 432 |
| Gear Ranges . . . . .                                                | 253 |
| Gear Select Lever Override . . . . .                                 | 351 |
| General Information . . . . .                                        | 184 |
| Glass Cleaning . . . . .                                             | 426 |
| Grocery Bag Retainer . . . . .                                       | 53  |
| Gross Axle Weight Rating . . . . .                                   | 297 |
| Gross Vehicle Weight Rating . . . . .                                | 296 |
| Guide                                                                |     |
| Body Builders . . . . .                                              | 7   |
| GVWR . . . . .                                                       | 294 |
| Hazard                                                               |     |
| Driving Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water . . . . . | 318 |
| Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .                                     | 322 |
| Headlights . . . . .                                                 | 328 |
| Automatic . . . . .                                                  | 71  |
| Cleaning . . . . .                                                   | 423 |
| High Beam . . . . .                                                  | 70  |
| High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch . . . . .                           | 70  |
| Passing . . . . .                                                    | 71  |

|                                                     |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Switch . . . . .                                    | 68          |
| Head Restraints . . . . .                           | 53          |
| Heated Mirrors . . . . .                            | 66          |
| High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch . . . . . | 70          |
| Hill Descent Control . . . . .                      | 176         |
| Hill Descent Control Indicator . . . . .            | 176         |
| Hill Start Assist . . . . .                         | 168         |
| Hitches                                             |             |
| Trailer Towing . . . . .                            | 300         |
| Hoisting . . . . .                                  | 395         |
| HomeLink (Garage Door Opener) . . . . .             | 102         |
| Hood Prop . . . . .                                 | 100         |
| Hood Release . . . . .                              | 100         |
| Hub Caps . . . . .                                  | 346         |
| Ignition . . . . .                                  | 26          |
| Switch . . . . .                                    | 26          |
| Illuminated Entry . . . . .                         | 77          |
| Immobilizer (Sentry Key) . . . . .                  | 30          |
| Inside Rearview Mirror . . . . .                    | 59, 60, 322 |
| Instrument Cluster                                  |             |
| Descriptions . . . . .                              | 160         |
| Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning . . . . .            | 425         |
| Integrated Trailer Brake Controls . . . . .         | 304         |
| Interior Appearance Care . . . . .                  | 424         |

|                                                          |           |                                        |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| Interior Lights. . . . .                                 | .74       | Sentry (Immobilizer) . . . . .         | .30            |
| Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers). . . . .              | .78       | Lane Change And Turn Signals . . . . . | .73            |
| Introduction. . . . .                                    | .4        | Lane Change Assist. . . . .            | .74            |
| Inverter                                                 |           | Latches. . . . .                       | .240           |
| Power . . . . .                                          | .126      | Hood . . . . .                         | .100           |
| iPod/USB/MP3 Control. . . . .                            | .485      | Lead Free Gasoline . . . . .           | .432           |
| Jacking And Tire Changing. . . . .                       | .341      | Leaks, Fluid . . . . .                 | .240           |
| Jack Location . . . . .                                  | .341      | Life Of Tires . . . . .                | .410           |
| Jack Operation . . . . .                                 | .341      | Light Bulbs. . . . .                   | .240           |
| Jump Starting . . . . .                                  | .347      | Lights. . . . .                        | .240           |
| Key Fob                                                  |           | Air Bag . . . . .                      | .152, 199, 237 |
| Panic Alarm . . . . .                                    | .22       | Automatic Headlights . . . . .         | .71            |
| Programming Additional Key Fobs . . . . .                | .26, 31   | Brake Assist Warning . . . . .         | .174           |
| Key Fob Battery Service (Remote Keyless Entry) . . . . . | .23       | Brake Warning . . . . .                | .152           |
| Key Fob Programming (Remote Keyless Entry) . . . . .     | .26       | Bulb Replacement . . . . .             | .327           |
| Key-In Reminder. . . . .                                 | .28       | Cap Top Clearance . . . . .            | .332           |
| Keyless Enter-N-Go . . . . .                             | .36, 246  | Cargo . . . . .                        | .74            |
| Lock The Vehicle's Doors . . . . .                       | .453, 474 | Center Mounted Stop . . . . .          | .330           |
| Passive Entry . . . . .                                  | .36       | Courtesy/Reading . . . . .             | .75, 76        |
| Passive Entry Programming . . . . .                      | .36       | Cruise . . . . .                       | .161           |
| Passive Entry Programming . . . . .                      | .474      | Daytime Running . . . . .              | .69            |
| Keys . . . . .                                           | .19       | Engine Temperature Warning . . . . .   | .154           |
| Replacement . . . . .                                    | .31       | Exterior . . . . .                     | .240           |
|                                                          |           | Fog . . . . .                          | .73, 330       |

- Four-Wheel Drive Indicator . . . . .265
- Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .322
- Headlights . . . . .68
- High Beam . . . . .70
- High Beam/Low Beam Select . . . . .70
- Hill Descent Control Indicator . . . . .176
- Illuminated Entry . . . . .77
- Interior . . . . .74, 75, 76
- Low Fuel . . . . .158
- Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) . . . . .155
- Park . . . . .160
- Passing . . . . .71
- Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .152
- Security Alarm . . . . .153
- Service . . . . .327
- Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) . . . . .157, 178
- Traction Control . . . . .174
- Transfer Case . . . . .265
- Turn Signal . . . . .328
- Turn Signals . . . . .73, 160, 240
- Warning Instrument Cluster Descriptions . . .154, 160
- Limited-Slip Differential . . . . .270, 395
- Loading Vehicle. . . . .294
- Tires . . . . .402
- Load Shed
  - Battery Saver Mode . . . . .150
  - Battery Saver On . . . . .150
  - Electrical Load Reduction . . . . .150
  - Intelligent Battery Sensor . . . . .150
- Locks
  - Automatic Door . . . . .39
  - Child Protection . . . . .40
  - Power Door . . . . .35
- Low Tire Pressure System. . . . .178
- Lubrication, Body . . . . .380
- Lug Nuts . . . . .345, 429
- Maintenance Free Battery . . . . .367
- Maintenance Schedule . . . . .361
- Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) . . .155, 163
- Manual, Service. . . . .514
- Manual Transmission
  - Fluid Level Check . . . . .395
- Media Hub . . . . .485
- Memory Feature (Memory Seats) . . . . .41
- Memory Seat . . . . .41, 46
- Memory Seats And Radio . . . . .41
- Methanol . . . . .433
- Mirrors . . . . .59

|                                            |              |                                            |           |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Electric Powered . . . . .                 | .62          | Filter . . . . .                           | .370, 437 |
| Heated . . . . .                           | .66          | Filter Disposal . . . . .                  | .370      |
| Memory . . . . .                           | .46          | Identification Logo . . . . .              | .369      |
| Outside . . . . .                          | .61          | Materials Added To . . . . .               | .370      |
| Rearview . . . . .                         | .59, 60, 322 | Pressure Warning Light . . . . .           | .154      |
| Trailer Towing . . . . .                   | .65          | Recommendation . . . . .                   | .369      |
| Modifications/Alterations                  |              | Synthetic . . . . .                        | .370      |
| Vehicle . . . . .                          | .7           | Viscosity . . . . .                        | .370      |
| Monitor, Tire Pressure System . . . . .    | .178         | Oil Filter, Change . . . . .               | .370      |
| Mopar Parts . . . . .                      | .513         | Oil Filter, Selection. . . . .             | .370      |
| MP3 Control . . . . .                      | .485         | Oil Pressure Light . . . . .               | .154      |
| Multi-Function Control Lever . . . . .     | .69          | Onboard Diagnostic System . . . . .        | .161      |
| Navigation System (Uconnect GPS) . . . . . | .290         | Operating Precautions . . . . .            | .161      |
| New Vehicle Break-In Period . . . . .      | .248         | Operator Manual                            |           |
| Occupant Restraints . . . . .              | .185         | Owner's Manual . . . . .                   | .5        |
| Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) . . . . .   | .432         | Outside Rearview Mirrors . . . . .         | .61       |
| Oil Change Indicator . . . . .             | .139         | Overdrive . . . . .                        | .259      |
| Oil Change Indicator, Reset . . . . .      | .139         | Overdrive OFF Switch . . . . .             | .259      |
| Oil, Engine . . . . .                      | .369, 437    | Overheating, Engine . . . . .              | .350      |
| Capacity . . . . .                         | .436         | Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . . . . . | .514      |
| Change Interval . . . . .                  | .369         | Paint Care . . . . .                       | .422      |
| Dipstick . . . . .                         | .367         | Panic Alarm . . . . .                      | .22       |
| Disposal . . . . .                         | .370         | Parking Brake . . . . .                    | .249      |
|                                            |              | ParkSense System, Rear . . . . .           | .277, 284 |

- Passive Entry . . . . .36
- Pedals, Adjustable . . . . .57
- Personal Settings . . . . .146
- Pets . . . . .236
- Placard, Tire And Loading Information . . . . .402
- Power
  - Distribution Center (Fuses) . . . . .334
  - Door Locks . . . . .35
  - Inverter . . . . .126
  - Mirrors . . . . .62
  - Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) . . . . .122
  - Seats . . . . .44
  - Sliding Rear Window . . . . .99
  - Steering . . . . .273
  - Take-Off Adapter . . . . .270
  - Take-Off Operation . . . . .270
  - Windows . . . . .97
- Power Seats
  - Down . . . . .44, 46
  - Forward . . . . .44, 46
  - Rearward . . . . .44, 46
  - Recline . . . . .44
  - Tilt . . . . .44, 46
  - Up . . . . .44, 46
- Power Steering Fluid . . . . .439
- Pregnant Women And Seat Belts . . . . .196
- Preparation For Jacking . . . . .341
- Programmable Electronic Features . . . . .146
- PTO (Power Take-Off) . . . . .270
- Radial Ply Tires . . . . .408
- Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) . . . . .386, 388
- Radio Frequency
  - General Information . . . . .26, 30, 32, 39
- Radio Operation . . . . .486
- Rain Sensitive Wiper System . . . . .79
- Rear Axle (Differential) . . . . .394, 395
- Rear ParkSense System . . . . .277, 284
- Reclining Rear Seats . . . . .43
- Recreational Towing . . . . .313
  - Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .315
  - Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .317
- Reformulated Gasoline . . . . .432
- Refrigerant . . . . .373, 374
- Release, Hood . . . . .100
- Reminder, Seat Belt . . . . .186
- Remote Keyless Entry . . . . .21
  - Panic Alarm . . . . .22
  - Programming Additional Key Fobs . . . . .26, 31

- Remote Starting
  - Exit Remote Start Mode . . . . .29
  - Uconnect Customer Programmable Features . . . .455
  - Uconnect Settings . . . . .455
- Replacement Keys . . . . .31
- Replacement Tires . . . . .411
- Reporting Safety Defects . . . . .513
- Restraint, Head . . . . .53
- Restraints, Child . . . . .211
- Rotation, Tires . . . . .418
- Safety Checks Inside Vehicle . . . . .237
- Safety Checks Outside Vehicle . . . . .239
- Safety Defects, Reporting . . . . .513
- Safety, Exhaust Gas . . . . .237
- Safety Information, Tire . . . . .396
- Safety Tips . . . . .236
- Schedule, Maintenance . . . . .361
- Seat Belt
  - Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage . . . . .192
  - Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) . . . . .197
  - Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation . . . . .189
- Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .152
- Seat Belts . . . . .186, 237
  - Adjustable Shoulder Belt . . . . .192
  - Adjustable Upper Shoulder Anchorage . . . . .192
  - Child Restraints . . . . .211
  - Extender . . . . .195
  - Front Seat . . . . .186, 189
  - Inspection . . . . .237
  - Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting . . . . .191
  - Operating Instructions . . . . .189
  - Pregnant Women . . . . .196
  - Reminder . . . . .186
  - Seat Belt Extender . . . . .195
  - Untwisting Procedure . . . . .191
- Seat Belts Maintenance . . . . .425
- Seats . . . . .41, 43, 44, 46
  - Adjustment . . . . .41, 44, 46
  - Easy Entry . . . . .49
  - Folding Floor . . . . .116
  - Memory . . . . .46
  - Power . . . . .44
  - Rear Folding . . . . .41
  - Reclining Rear . . . . .43
  - Tilting . . . . .41
- Security Alarm . . . . .32, 153
- Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .437
- Sentry Key
  - Key Programming . . . . .31



- Sentry Key (Immobilizer) . . . . . 30
- Sentry Key Replacement . . . . . 31
- Service Assistance . . . . . 510
- Service Contract . . . . . 512
- Service Manuals . . . . . 514
- Settings, Personal . . . . . 146
- Shifting . . . . . 251
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . . 252
  - Transfer Case . . . . . 264
  - Transfer Case, Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . . 315
  - Transfer Case, Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . . 317
- Shift Lever Override . . . . . 351
- Signals, Turn . . . . . 73, 160, 240
- Siri. . . . . 503
- Sliding Rear Window, Power . . . . . 99
- Snow Chains (Tire Chains) . . . . . 417
- Snow Plow . . . . . 310
- Snow Tires . . . . . 413
- Spare Tires. . . . . 413, 414, 415
- Spark Plugs . . . . . 437
- Speed Control
  - Accel/Decel . . . . . 276
  - Cancel . . . . . 277
  - Resume . . . . . 277
- Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . . 274
- Starting . . . . . 244
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . . 244
  - Button . . . . . 26
  - Cold Weather . . . . . 248
  - Engine Fails To Start . . . . . 247
- Starting Procedures (Gas Engines) . . . . . 244
- Steering
  - Power . . . . . 273
  - Tilt Column . . . . . 56
  - Wheel, Heated . . . . . 56, 57
  - Wheel, Tilt . . . . . 56
- Steering Wheel Audio Controls . . . . . 484
- Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls . . . 484
- Storage Compartment, Center Seat . . . . . 112
- Storage, Vehicle . . . . . 95, 422
- Storing Your Vehicle . . . . . 422
- Sway Control, Trailer . . . . . 175
- Synthetic Engine Oil . . . . . 370
- Telescoping Steering Column . . . . . 56
- Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC) . . . . . 94
- Tilt
  - Down . . . . . 44, 46

- Up ..... 44, 46
- Tilt Steering Column ..... 56
- Tip Start ..... 244
- Tire And Loading Information Placard ..... 402
- Tire Markings ..... 396
- Tires ..... 239, 406, 413, 420
  - Aging (Life Of Tires) ..... 410
  - Air Pressure ..... 406
  - Chains ..... 417
  - Changing ..... 341
  - Compact Spare ..... 414
  - Dual ..... 345, 419, 429
  - General Information ..... 406, 413
  - High Speed ..... 408
  - Inflation Pressure ..... 407
  - Jacking ..... 341
  - Life Of Tires ..... 410
  - Load Capacity ..... 402, 403
  - Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ..... 157
  - Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) ..... 178
  - Quality Grading ..... 420
  - Radial ..... 408
  - Replacement ..... 411
  - Rotation ..... 418
  - Safety ..... 396, 406
  - Sizes ..... 398
  - Snow Tires ..... 413
  - Spare Tires ..... 413, 415
  - Spinning ..... 409
  - Trailer Towing ..... 303
  - Tread Wear Indicators ..... 410
  - Wheel Nut Torque ..... 345, 429
- Tire Safety Information ..... 396
- Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight ..... 301
- To Open Hood ..... 100
- Torque Converter Clutch ..... 260
- Towing ..... 296, 354
  - Disabled Vehicle ..... 354
  - Guide ..... 301
  - Recreational ..... 313
  - Weight ..... 301
- Towing Behind A Motorhome ..... 313
- Traction ..... 318
- Traction Control ..... 170
- Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ..... 175
- Trailer Towing ..... 296
  - Cooling System Tips ..... 310
  - Hitches ..... 300
  - Minimum Requirements ..... 302
  - Mirrors ..... 65

- Tips . . . . . 309
- Trailer And Tongue Weight . . . . . 301
- Wiring . . . . . 308
- Trailer Towing Guide . . . . . 301
- Trailer Weight . . . . . 301
- Transfer Case . . . . . 395
  - Electronically Shifted . . . . . 265
  - Fluid . . . . . 439
- Transmission
  - Automatic . . . . . 252, 391
  - Fluid . . . . . 439
  - Maintenance . . . . . 391
  - Shifting . . . . . 251
- Transporting Pets . . . . . 236
- Tread Wear Indicators . . . . . 410
- Turn Signals . . . . . 73, 160, 328
- Uconnect
  - Customer Programmable Features . . . . . 455
  - Uconnect Settings . . . . . 446, 453
  - Uconnect Settings . . . . . 455
  - Uconnect Settings . . . . . 474
- Uconnect Settings
  - Customer Programmable Features . . . . . 36
  - Customer Programmable Features . . . . . 453, 474
- Passive Entry Programming . . . . . 36
- Passive Entry Programming . . . . . 453
- Passive Entry Programming . . . . . 453, 474
- Uniform Tire Quality Grades . . . . . 420
- Universal Garage Door Opener (HomeLink). . . . . 102
- Universal Transmitter. . . . . 102
- Unleaded Gasoline . . . . . 432
- Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt . . . . . 191
- USB . . . . . 485
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . . . . 428
- Vehicle Loading . . . . . 294, 403
- Vehicle Modifications/Alterations. . . . . 7
- Vehicle Storage. . . . . 95, 422
- Viscosity, Engine Oil . . . . . 370
- Voice Command . . . . . 488
- Voice Recognition System (VR) . . . . . 488
- Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Descriptions). . . 157
- Warnings And Cautions . . . . . 7
- Warranty Information . . . . . 513
- Washers, Windshield. . . . . 78, 367
- Washing Vehicle . . . . . 423
- Water
  - Driving Through . . . . . 318

|                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| Wheel And Wheel Tire Care . . . . . | 416         |
| Wheel And Wheel Tire Trim . . . . . | 416         |
| Wheel Cover . . . . .               | 346         |
| Wheel Nut Torque . . . . .          | 345, 346    |
| Wind Buffeting . . . . .            | 100         |
| Window Fogging . . . . .            | 95          |
| Windows . . . . .                   | 97          |
| Power . . . . .                     | 97          |
| Reset Auto-Up . . . . .             | 98          |
| Windshield Defroster . . . . .      | 238         |
| Windshield Washers . . . . .        | 77, 78, 367 |
| Fluid . . . . .                     | 77, 367     |
| Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .   | 381         |
| Windshield Wipers . . . . .         | 77          |
| Wipers Blade Replacement . . . . .  | 381         |
| Wipers, Intermittent . . . . .      | 78          |
| Wipers, Rain Sensitive . . . . .    | 79          |

## **INSTALLATION OF RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT**

Special design considerations are incorporated into this vehicle's electronic system to provide immunity to radio frequency signals. Mobile two-way radios and telephone equipment must be installed properly by trained personnel. The following must be observed during installation.

The positive power connection should be made directly to the battery and fused as close to the battery as possible. The negative power connection should be made to body sheet metal adjacent to the negative battery connection. This connection should not be fused.

Antennas for two-way radios should be mounted on the roof or the rear area of the vehicle. Care should be used in mounting antennas with magnet bases. Magnets may affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

The antenna cable should be as short as practical and routed away from the vehicle wiring when possible. Use only fully shielded coaxial cable.

Carefully match the antenna and cable to the radio to ensure a low Standing Wave Ratio (SWR).

Mobile radio equipment with output power greater than normal may require special precautions.

All installations should be checked for possible interference between the communications equipment and the vehicle's electronic systems.



**18DD-126-AD**

**©2018 FCA US LLC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.**

**RAM IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF FCA US LLC.**



**FOURTH EDITION  
PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.**